

LDAP Account Manager - Manual

LDAP Account Manager - Manual

Table of Contents

Overview	viii
1. Big picture	1
Overview	1
Glossary	3
Architecture	3
2. Installation	5
New installation	5
Requirements	5
Prepackaged releases	5
Installing the tar.bz2	7
Docker	8
System configuration	8
Upgrading LAM or migrate from LAM to LAM Pro	9
Upgrade LAM	9
Version specific upgrade instructions	10
Uninstallation of LAM (Pro)	14
Migration to a new server	14
3. Configuration	15
General settings	15
Configuration Database	16
License (LAM Pro only)	16
Security settings	16
Password policy	17
Logging	18
Mail options (LAM Pro)	19
WebAuthn/FIDO2 devices	19
Change master password	20
Server profiles	20
Manage server profiles	20
Editing a server profile	21
Cron jobs (LAM Pro)	32
Typical scenarios	45
Self Service (LAM Pro)	46
Import and export configuration	46
4. Managing entries in your LDAP directory	48
Typical usage scenarios	49
Users	51
Personal	53
Unix	57
Group of names and group of members (LAM Pro)	62
Organizational roles (LAM Pro)	63
Shadow	64
NIS net groups	64
Password self reset (LAM Pro)	65
Hosts	67
Samba 3	67
Windows (Samba 4/Active Directory)	70
AD LDS (formerly ADAM) (LAM Pro)	75
Filesystem quota (lamdaemon)	79
Filesystem quota (LDAP)	80
Kolab	80
Asterisk	81
EDU person	81
PyKota	82
Password policy (LAM Pro)	84

Account locking for 389ds (LAM Pro)	84
FreeRadius	85
Heimdal Kerberos (LAM Pro)	86
MIT Kerberos (LAM Pro)	87
NIS mail aliases	89
Courier mail	91
Qmail (LAM Pro)	92
Mail routing	93
SSH keys	94
YubiKey	95
Authorized services	97
IMAP mailboxes	97
IP addresses (LAM Pro)	99
Account	100
OpenLDAP TOTP (LAM Pro)	100
Last login (LAM Pro)	100
Groups	101
Unix	101
Unix groups with rfc2307bis schema (LAM Pro)	103
Samba 3	105
Windows (Samba 4)	106
AD LDS (formerly ADAM) (LAM Pro)	107
Kolab	108
Mail routing	109
Quota	109
Dynamic lists (LAM Pro)	110
PyKota	112
Hosts	112
Password policy (LAM Pro)	113
Hosts	113
Account	113
Device (LAM Pro)	113
Samba 3	113
Windows (Samba 4)	114
IP addresses (LAM Pro)	115
MAC addresses	115
Puppet	115
NIS net groups	116
Password policy (LAM Pro)	117
Samba 3 domains	117
Group of (unique) names and group of members (LAM Pro)	118
Organizational roles (LAM Pro)	120
Simple Security Object (LAM Pro)	122
Asterisk	122
Kopano (LAM Pro)	124
Users	124
Contacts	126
Groups	127
Address lists	128
Dynamic groups	129
Servers	130
Kolab shared folders	132
DHCP	133
Bind DLZ (LAM Pro)	136
Configuration	137
DNS entries	139
XFR entries	143
PowerDNS (LAM Pro)	143

Aliases (LAM Pro)	145
Mail aliases	145
NIS mail aliases	146
Courier mail aliases	146
NIS net groups	147
NIS objects (LAM Pro)	147
Automount objects (LAM Pro)	147
Oracle databases (LAM Pro)	148
Password policies (LAM Pro)	150
MIT Kerberos policies (LAM Pro)	151
PyKota printers	152
PyKota billing codes	153
Custom types (LAM Pro)	154
Custom fields (LAM Pro)	156
Custom scripts (LAM Pro)	165
Sudo roles (LAM Pro)	168
LDAP views based on nsview (LAM Pro)	169
Apache Guacamole (LAM Pro)	170
Auto delete (LAM Pro)	171
General information	172
5. Tools	173
Profile editor	173
PDF editor	175
File upload	178
Multi edit	180
LDAP import/export	182
Import	182
Export	183
OU editor	184
Tree view	184
Schema browser	185
Server information	185
WebAuthn devices	186
Tests	187
Lamdaemon test	187
Schema test	187
6. Access levels and password reset page (LAM Pro)	189
Access levels	189
Password reset page	189
7. Self service (LAM Pro)	193
Preparations	193
OpenLDAP ACLs	193
Other LDAP servers	193
Creating a self service profile	193
Edit your new profile	195
General settings	195
Page layout	202
Module settings	205
Samba 3	206
Password self reset	206
User self registration	210
Request Access	214
Custom fields	217
OpenLDAP TOTP	224
Adapt the self service to your corporate design	225
Custom header	225
CSS files	225
A. LDAP schema files	226

B. Security	230
LAM configuration passwords	230
Use of SSL	230
LDAP with SSL and TLS	230
Setup SSL certificates in LAM general settings	230
Setup SSL certificates on system level	230
SELinux	231
Chrooted servers	232
Protection of your LDAP password and directory contents	232
Apache configuration	232
Security headers	232
Sensitive directories	232
Use LDAP HTTP authentication for LAM	233
Self Service behind proxy in DMZ (LAM Pro)	234
Nginx configuration	235
Security headers	235
RPM based installations	235
DEB based installations	235
tar.bz2 based installations	235
WebAuthn/FIDO2	236
C. Typical OpenLDAP settings	237
D. Setup for home directory and quota management	238
Installation	238
LDAP Account Manager configuration	238
Setup sudo	239
Setup Perl	239
Set up SSH	240
Troubleshooting	240
E. Setup password self reset schema (LAM Pro)	241
New installation	241
Schema update	242
F. Adapt LAM to your corporate design	244
G. Clustering LAM	246
H. Troubleshooting	247
Reset configuration password	247
Server profiles	247
Main configuration	247
Reset IP restriction	247
File system storage	247
Database storage	248
Functional issues	248
Performance issues	249
LDAP server	249
LAM web server	250

List of Tables

1.1. Glossary	3
2.1. Locales	8
3.1. Options	36
3.2. Options	37
3.3. Options	38
3.4. Options	38
3.5. Options	39
3.6. Options	40
3.7. Options	41
3.8. Options	41
3.9. Options	42
3.10. Options	42
3.11. Options	43
3.12. Options	43
3.13. Options	44
3.14. Options	44
4.1. LDAP attribute mappings	56
4.2. Zone file	142
4.3.	164
4.4. Action types	166
5.1.	181
7.1. General options	196
7.2. Self service fields	203
7.3.	212
7.4.	223
A.1. LDAP schema files	226

Overview

LDAP Account Manager (LAM) manages user, group and host accounts in an LDAP directory. LAM runs on any webserver with PHP8 support and connects to your LDAP server unencrypted or via SSL/TLS.

LAM supports Samba 3/4, Unix, Kopano, Kolab 3, address book entries, NIS mail aliases, MAC addresses and much more. There is a tree viewer included to allow access to the raw LDAP attributes. You can use templates for account creation and use multiple configuration profiles.

<https://www.ldap-account-manager.org/>

Copyright (C) 2003 - 2024 Roland Gruber <post@rolandgruber.de>

Key features:

- managing user/group/host/domain entries
- account profiles
- account creation via file upload
- multiple configuration profiles
- LDAP browser
- schema browser
- OU editor
- PDF export for all accounts
- manage user/group Quota and create home directories

Requirements:

- PHP ($\geq 8.0.2$)
- Any standard LDAP server (e.g. OpenLDAP, Active Directory, Samba 4, OpenDJ, 389 Directory Server, Apache DS, ...)
- A recent web browser that supports CSS2 and JavaScript, at minimum:
 - Firefox (max. 2 years old)
 - Chrome (max. 2 years old)
 - Edge (max. 2 years old)
 - Opera (max. 2 years old)

The default password to edit the configuration options is "lam".

License:

LAM is published under the GNU General Public License. The complete list of licenses can be found in the copyright file.

Default password:

The default password for the LAM configuration is "lam".

Have fun!

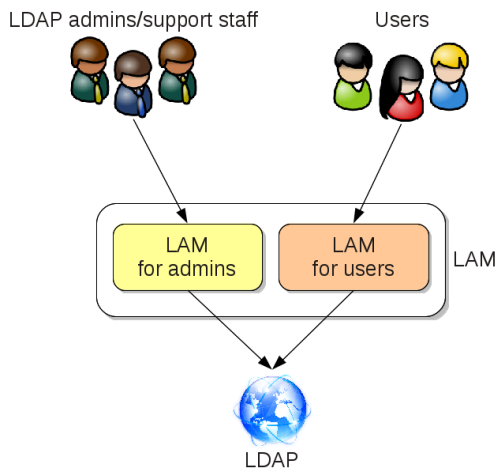
The LAM development team

Chapter 1. Big picture

Overview

LAM has two major areas:

- Admin interface to manage all sorts of different LDAP entries (e.g. users/groups/hosts)
- Self service (LAM Pro) where end users can edit their own data



Admin interface

This is the main part of the application. It allows to manage a large list of LDAP entries (e.g. users, groups, DNS entries, ...). This part is accessed by LDAP admins and support staff.

The screenshot shows the 'Users' management page in LDAP Account Manager Pro. The page title is 'LDAP Account Manager Pro - 7.9.DEV d_demo - admin'. In the top right corner, there are navigation links for 'Accounts', 'Tools', and 'Help', with red numbers '1', '2', and '3' below them respectively. Below the title, there are three buttons: 'New user', 'File upload', and 'Delete selected users'. A breadcrumb trail shows 'demo > People > test > de'. The 'User count: 12' is displayed with a red '5' next to it. A table lists the users with columns for 'Actions', 'User name', 'First name', 'Last name', 'UID number', 'GID number', and 'Account s'. The table contains 12 rows of user data.

Actions	User name	First name	Last name	UID number	GID number	Account s
Sort sequence						
7 <input type="checkbox"/> Filter ▾						
<input type="checkbox"/>	cbach	Claudia	Bach	15429	11819	
<input type="checkbox"/>	ebaecker	Ernst	Bäcker	15430	10815	
<input type="checkbox"/>	fhuber	Franz	Huber	26137	10816	
<input type="checkbox"/>	hmeier	Helmut	Meier	26139	10817	
<input type="checkbox"/>	hschuster	Heinz	Schuster	15427	10815	
<input type="checkbox"/>	kmontag	Kerstin	Montag	26141	11820	
<input type="checkbox"/>	mfischer	Monika	Fischer	15425	11820	
<input type="checkbox"/>	rmontag	Ramona	Montag	26140	11819	
<input type="checkbox"/>	shuber	Sepp	Huber	15419	10815	
<input type="checkbox"/>	smiller	Steve	Miller	26142	11820	
<input type="checkbox"/>	thauser	Thomas	Hauser	15423	10815	
<input type="checkbox"/>	xmontag	Xaver	Montag	26136	10816	

Functional areas:

1. Account types: Here you can switch between different account types (e.g. user/groups)

2. Tools menu: Contains useful tools such as profile/PDF editor and tree view
3. Help: Link to manual
4. Logout: Logout of the application
5. List view: Lists all entries of the selected account type (e.g. users)
6. List configuration: Configuration settings for list view (e.g. number of entries per page)
7. Filter: Filter boxes allow to enter simple filters like "a*"

Self Service

The self service provides a simple interface for your users to edit their own data (e.g. telephone number). It also supports user self registration and password reset functionality.

You can fully customize the layout of the self service page.

LAM self service

Here you can change your personal settings.

Personal data

First name	
Last name	User
Email address	<input type="text" value="test@ldap-account-manager.org"/>
Telephone number	<input type="text" value="1234567891"/>
Mobile telephone number	<input type="text" value="123456789"/>
Street	<input type="text" value="Test 123"/>
Postal address	<input type="text" value="12345 City"/>
Business unit	<input type="text" value="Unit"/>

Password

New password	<input type="text"/>
Reenter password	<input type="text"/>

Configuration

Configuration is done on multiple levels:

Global

Effective for all parts of LAM (e.g. logging and password policy).

Configured via LAM admin login -> LAM configuration -> Edit general settings.

Server profile

All settings for an LDAP connection (e.g. server name, LDAP suffixes, account types/modules to activate) in admin interface. There may be multiple for one LDAP server (e.g. for multiple departments, different user groups, ...).

Configured via LAM admin login -> LAM configuration -> Edit server profile.

Self service

All settings for a self service interface (e.g. fields that can be edited, password reset functionality, ...).

Configured via LAM admin login -> LAM configuration -> Edit self service.

Profiles

Account profiles store default values for new LDAP entries.

PDF structures

PDF structures define the layout and list of data fields to include in PDF export.

Glossary

Here you can find a list of common terms used in LAM.

Table 1.1. Glossary

Term	Description
Account module	Plugin for a specific account type (e.g. Unix plugin for user type)
Account type	Type of an LDAP entry (e.g. user/group/host)
Admin interface	LAM webpages for admin user (e.g. to create new users)
Lamdaemon	Support script to manage user file system quotas and create home directories
PDF editor	Manages PDF structures
PDF export	Exports an entry to PDF by using a PDF structure
PDF structure	Defines the layout and list of data fields to include in PDF export
Profile	Template for creation of LDAP entries, contains default values
Profile editor	Manages profiles for all account types
Self Service	LAM webpages for normal users where they can edit their own data
Self service profile	Configuration for self service pages (multiple configurations can exist)
Tree view	LDAP browser that allows to modify LDAP entries on attribute/object class level

Architecture

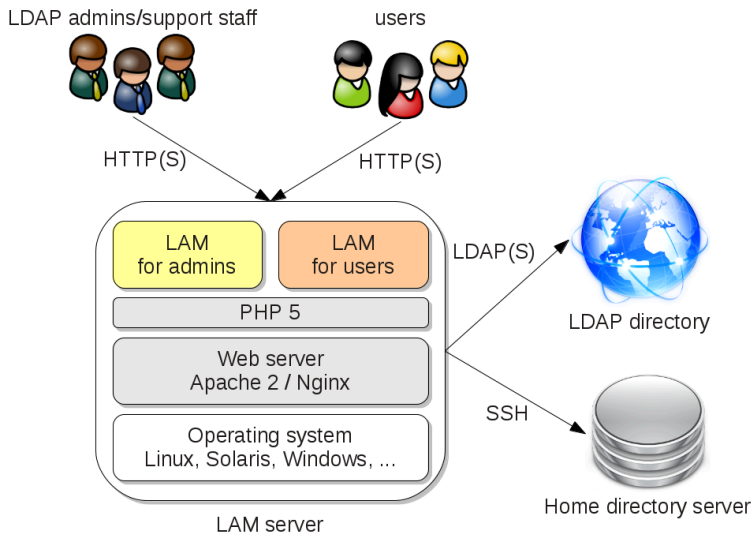
There are basically two groups of users for LAM:

- **LDAP administrators and support staff:**

These people administer LDAP entries like user accounts, groups, ...

- **Users:**

This includes all people who need to manage their own data inside the LDAP directory. E.g. these people edit their contact information with LAM self service (LAM Pro).



Therefore, LAM is split into two separate parts, LAM for admins and for users. LAM for admins allows to manage various types of LDAP entries (e.g. users, groups, hosts, ...). It also contains tools like batch upload, account profiles, LDAP schema viewer and an LDAP browser. LAM for users focuses on end users. It provides a self service for the users to edit their personal data (e.g. contact information). The LAM administrator is able to specify what data may be changed by the users. The design is also adaptable to your corporate design.

LAM for admins/users is accessible via HTTP(S) by all major web browsers (Firefox, IE, Opera, ...).

LAM runtime environment:

LAM runs on PHP. Therefore, it is independent of CPU architecture and operating system (OS). You can run LAM on any OS which supports Apache, Nginx or other PHP compatible web servers.

Home directory server:

You can manage user home directories and their quotas inside LAM. The home directories may reside on the server where LAM is installed or any remote server. The commands for home directory management are secured by SSH. LAM will use the user name and password of the logged in LAM administrator for authentication.

LDAP directory:

LAM connects to your LDAP server via standard LDAP protocol. It also supports encrypted connections with SSL and TLS.

Chapter 2. Installation

New installation

Requirements

LAM has the following requirements to run:

- Apache/Nginx webserver (SSL recommended) with PHP module (PHP (\geq 8.0.2) with ldap, gettext, xml, openssl and optional OpenSSL)
- Some LAM plugins may require additional PHP extensions (you will get a note on the login page if something is missing)
- Perl (optional, needed only for lamdaemon)
- Any standard LDAP server (e.g. OpenLDAP, Active Directory, Samba 4, OpenDJ, 389 Directory Server, Apache DS, ...)
- A recent web browser that supports CSS2 and JavaScript, at minimum:
 - Firefox (max. 2 years old)
 - Edge (max. 2 years old)
 - Opera (max. 2 years old)
 - Chrome (max. 2 years old)

OpenSSL will be used to store your LDAP password encrypted in the session file.

Please note that LAM does not ship with a SELinux policy. Please disable SELinux or create your own policy.

See LDAP schema files for information about used LDAP schema files.

Prepackaged releases

LAM is available as prepackaged version for various platforms.

Debian/Ubuntu



LAM is part of the official Debian/Ubuntu repository. New releases are uploaded to unstable and will be available automatically in testing and the stable releases. You can run

apt-get install ldap-account-manager

to install LAM on your server. Additionally, you may download the latest LAM Debian/Ubuntu packages from the LAM homepage [<http://www.ldap-account-manager.org/>] or the Debian package homepage [<http://packages.debian.org/search?keywords=ldap-account-manager>].

Installation of the latest packages on Debian/Ubuntu

1. Install the LAM package

```
dpkg -i ldap-account-manager_*.deb
```

If you get any messages about missing dependencies run now: `apt-get -f install`

2. Install the lamdaemon package (optional)

```
dpkg -i ldap-account-manager-lamdaemon_*.deb
```

Suse/Fedora/CentOS



There are RPM packages available on the LAM homepage [<http://www.ldap-account-manager.org/>]. The packages can be installed with these commands:

```
rpm -e ldap-account-manager ldap-account-manager-lamdaemon (if an older version is installed)
```

```
rpm -i <path to LAM package>
```

Note: The RPM packages do not contain a dependency to PHP due to the various package names for it. Please make sure that you install Apache/Nginx with PHP.

Example installation for Apache + PHP 8 on OpenSuse 15:

- `zypper install apache2 php8 apache2-mod_php8 php8-ldap php8-zip php8-soap php8-gd php8-curl php8-gmp php8-mbstring php8-sqlite php8-mysql php8-gettext`
- `systemctl enable apache2`
- `systemctl start apache2`
- `firewall-cmd --add-service=http --permanent`
- `firewall-cmd --reload`

Other RPM based distributions

The RPM packages for Suse/Fedora are very generic and should be installable on other RPM-based distributions, too. The Fedora packages use `apache:apache` as file owner and the Suse ones use `wwwrun:www`.

FreeBSD



LAM is part of the official FreeBSD ports tree. For more details see these pages:

FreeBSD-SVN: <http://svnweb.freebsd.org/ports/head/sysutils/ldap-account-manager/>

FreshPorts: <http://www.freshports.org/sysutils/ldap-account-manager>

Installing the tar.bz2

Extract the archive

Please extract the archive with the following command:

```
tar xjf ldap-account-manager-<version>.tar.bz2
```

Install the files

Manual copy

Copy the files into the html-file scope of the web server. For example /apache/htdocs or /var/www/html.

Then set the appropriate file permissions inside the LAM directory:

- sess: write permission for apache/nginx user
- tmp: write permission for apache/nginx user
- tmp/internal: write permission for apache/nginx user
- config (with subdirectories): write permission for apache/nginx user
- lib/lamdaemon.pl: set executable

With configure script

Instead of manually copying files you can also use the included configure script to install LAM. Just run these commands in the extracted directory:

- ./configure
- make install

Options for "./configure":

- --with-httpd-user=USER USER is the name of your Apache/Nginx user account (default httpd)
- --with-httpd-group=GROUP GROUP is the name of your Apache/Nginx group (default httpd)
- --with-web-root=DIRECTORY DIRECTORY is the name where LAM should be installed (default /usr/local/lam)

Configuration files

Copy config/config.cfg.sample to config/config.cfg. Open the index.html in your web browser:

- Follow the link "LAM configuration" from the start page to configure LAM.
- Select "Edit general settings" to setup global settings and to change the master configuration password (default is "lam").
- Select "Edit server profiles" to setup a server profile.

Webserver configuration

Please see the Apache or Nginx chapter.

Docker

You can run LAM and LAM Pro inside Docker. See here [<https://github.com/LDAPAccountManager/docker/pkgs/container/lam>] for detailed instructions.

System configuration

PHP

LAM runs with PHP 8 (>= 8.0.2). Needed changes in your php.ini:

```
memory_limit = 128M
```

For large installations (>10000 LDAP entries) you may need to increase the memory limit to 256M.

If you run PHP with activated Suhosin [<http://www.hardened-php.net/suhosin/index.html>] extension please check your logs for alerts. E.g. LAM requires that "suhosin.post.max_name_length" and "suhosin.request.max_varname_length" are increased (e.g. to 256).

Locales for non-English translation

If you want to use a translated version of LAM be sure to install the needed locales. The following table shows the needed locales for the different languages.

Table 2.1. Locales

Language	Locale
Catalan	ca_ES.utf8
Chinese (Simplified)	zh_CN.utf8
Chinese (Traditional)	zh_TW.utf8
Czech	cs_CZ.utf8
Dutch	nl_NL.utf8
English - Great Britain	no extra locale needed
English - USA	en_US.utf8
French	fr_FR.utf8
German	de_DE.utf8
Hungarian	hu_HU.utf8
Italian	it_IT.utf8
Japanese	ja_JP.utf8
Polish	pl_PL.utf8
Portuguese	pt_BR.utf8
Russian	ru_RU.utf8
Slovak	sk_SK.utf8
Spanish	es_ES.utf8
Turkish	tr_TR.utf8
Ukrainian	uk_UA.utf8

You can get a list of all installed locales on your system by executing:

```
locale -a
```

Debian/Ubuntu users can add locales with "dpkg-reconfigure locales".

Upgrading LAM or migrate from LAM to LAM Pro

Upgrading from LAM to LAM Pro is like installing a new LAM version. Simply install the LAM Pro packages/tar.bz2 instead of the LAM ones.

Upgrade LAM

Backup configuration files

Configuration files need only to be backed up for .tar.bz2 installations. DEB/RPM installations do not require this step.

LAM stores all configuration files in the "config" folder. Please backup the following files and copy them after the new version is installed.

```
config/*.conf
config/config.cfg
config/pdf/*.xml
config/profiles/*
```

LAM Pro only:

```
config/selfService/*.*
```

Uninstall current LAM (Pro) version

If you used the RPM installation packages then remove the ldap-account-manager and ldap-account-manager-lam-daemon packages by calling "rpm -e ldap-account-manager ldap-account-manager-lamdaemon".

Debian/Ubuntu needs no removal of old packages.

For tar.bz2 please remove the folder where you installed LAM via configure or by copying the files.

Install new LAM (Pro) version

Please install the new LAM (Pro) release. Skip the part about setting up LAM configuration files.

Restore configuration files

RPM:

Please check if there are any files ending with ".rpmsave" in /var/lib/ldap-account-manager/config. In this case you need to manually remove the .rpmsave extension by overwriting the package file. E.g. rename default.user.rpmsave to default.user.

DEB:

Nothing needs to be restored.

tar.bz2:

Please restore your configuration files from the backup. Copy all files from the backup folder to the config folder in your LAM Pro installation. Do not simply replace the folder because the new LAM (Pro) release might include additional files in this folder. Overwrite any existing files with your backup files.

Final steps

Now open your webbrowser and point it to the LAM login page. All your settings should be migrated.

Please check also the version specific instructions. They might include additional actions.

Version specific upgrade instructions

You need to follow all steps from your current version to the new version. Unless explicitly noticed there is no need to install an intermediate release.

8.6 -> 8.7

LAM Pro:

- Self service profiles that were not saved with a LAM Pro version of the past 3 years must be saved with LAM Pro 8.6 before upgrading to LAM Pro 8.7.
- Self service profiles that have enabled "HTTP authentication" need to be reconfigured. Open the self service profile, select "HTTP authentication" as "Authentication method" (first tab, server settings) and save the self service profile.

8.1 -> 8.6

No actions required.

8.0 -> 8.1

Configuration settings in server profiles must be redone for group of unique names and group of members.

7.6 -> 8.0

No actions required.

7.5 -> 7.6

The tree view was rewritten from scratch. It moved to the tools menu. You need to reconfigure the tree suffix in your LAM server profile (tools section on first tab).

7.2 -> 7.5

No actions required.

7.1 -> 7.2

LAM Pro: All emails need a specified FROM address. This affects password email, self registration, password self reset and cron emails.

6.7 -> 7.1

No actions required.

6.6 -> 6.7

Self service: please verify the self service base URL in your self service profiles in case you have password self reset / user self registration enabled.

6.5 -> 6.6

No actions required.

6.4 -> 6.5

No actions required.

6.3 -> 6.4

No actions needed.

6.2 -> 6.3

Unix: Options in server profile for Unix users and groups need to be reconfigured. Several settings (e.g. id generation) are now specific to subaccount type.

Self Service: If you use a captcha for user self registration this needs to be reconfigured. On tab General settings please activate Google reCAPTCHA (the checkbox to secure login is optional). On tab Module settings please tick the captcha checkbox at self registration settings.

6.1 -> 6.2

No actions required.

6.0 -> 6.1

DEB+RPM configuration for nginx uses PHP 7 by default. Please see `/etc/ldap-account-manager/nginx.conf` if you use PHP 5.

5.7 -> 6.0

No actions needed.

5.6 -> 5.7

Windows: The department attribute was changed from "departmentNumber" to "department" to match Windows user manager. The attribute "departmentNumber" is no more supported by the Windows module. You will need to reactivate the department option in your server profile on module settings tab.

5.5 -> 5.6

Mail routing: No longer added by default. Use profile editor to activate by default for new users/groups.

Personal/Unix/Windows: no more replacement of e.g. `$user/$group` on user upload

5.4 -> 5.5

LAM Pro requires a license key. You can find it in your customer profile [<https://www.ldap-account-manager.org/lamcms/user/me>].

5.1 -> 5.4

No special actions needed.

5.0 -> 5.1

Self Service: There were large changes to provide a responsive design that works for desktop and mobile. If you use custom CSS to style Self Service then this must be updated.

4.9 -> 5.0

Samba 3: If you used logon hours then you need to set the correct time zone on tab "General settings" in server profile.

4.5 -> 4.9

No special actions needed.

4.4 -> 4.5

LAM will no longer follow referrals by default. This is ok for most installations. If you use LDAP referrals please activate referral following for your server profile (tab General settings -> Server settings -> Advanced options).

The self service pages now have an own option for allowed IPs. If your LAM installation uses IP restrictions please update the LAM main configuration.

Password self reset (LAM Pro) allows to set a backup email address. You need to update the LDAP schema if you want to use this feature.

4.3 -> 4.4

Apache configuration: LAM supports Apache 2.2 and 2.4. This requires that your Apache server has enabled the "version" module. For Debian/Ubuntu and Fedora this is the default setup. The Suse RPM will try to enable the version module during installation.

Kolab: User accounts get the object class "mailrecipient" by default. You can change this behaviour in the module settings section of your LAM server profile.

Windows: sAMAccountName is no longer set by default. Enable it in server profile if needed. The possible domains for the user name can also be set in server profile.

4.2.1 -> 4.3

LAM is no more shipped as tar.gz package but as tar.bz2 which allows smaller file sizes.

4.1 -> 4.2/4.2.1

Zarafa users: The default attribute for mail aliases is now "dn". If you use "uid" and did not change the server profile for a long time please check your LAM server profile for this setting and save it.

4.0 -> 4.1

Unix: The list of valid login shells is no longer configured in "config/shells" but in the server/self service profiles (Unix settings). LAM will use the following shells by default: /bin/bash, /bin/csh, /bin/dash, /bin/false, /bin/ksh, /bin/sh.

Please update your server/self service profile if you would like to change the list of valid login shells.

3.9 -> 4.0

The account profiles and PDF structures are now separated by server profile. This means that if you edit e.g. an account profile in server profile A then this change will not affect the account profiles in server profile B.

LAM will automatically migrate your existing files as soon as the login page is loaded.

Special install instructions:

- Debian: none, config files will be migrated when opening LAM's login page

- Suse/Fedora RPM:
 - Run "rpm -e ldap-account-manager ldap-account-manager-lamdaemon"
 - You may get warnings like "warning: /var/lib/ldap-account-manager/config/profiles/default.user saved as /var/lib/ldap-account-manager/config/profiles/default.user.rpmsave"
 - Please rename all files "*.rpmserve" and remove the file extension ".rpmserve". E.g. "default.user.rpmserve" needs to be renamed to "default.user".
 - Install the LAM packages with "rpm -i". E.g. "rpm -i ldap-account-manager-4.0-0.suse.1.noarch.rpm".
 - Open LAM's login page in your browser to complete the migration
- tar.gz: standard upgrade steps, config files will be migrated when opening LAM's login page

3.7 -> 3.9

No changes.

3.6 -> 3.7

Asterisk extensions: The extension entries are now grouped by extension name and account context. LAM will automatically assign priorities and set same owners for all entries.

3.5.0 -> 3.6

Debian users: LAM 3.6 requires to install FPDF 1.7. You can download the package here [<http://packages.debian.org/search?keywords=php-fpdf&searchon=names&suite=all§ion=all>]. If you use Debian Stable (Squeeze) please use the package from Testing (Wheezy).

3.4.0 -> 3.5.0

LAM Pro: The global config/passwordMailTemplate.txt is no longer supported. You can setup the mail settings now for each LAM server profile which provides more flexibility.

Suse/Fedora RPM installations: LAM is now installed to /usr/share/ldap-account-manager and /var/lib/ldap-account-manager.

Please note that configuration files are not migrated automatically. Please move the files from /srv/www/htdocs/lam/config (Suse) or /var/www/html/lam/config (Fedora) to /var/lib/ldap-account-manager/config.

3.3.0 -> 3.4.0

No changes.

3.2.0 -> 3.3.0

If you use custom images for the PDF export then these images need to be 5 times bigger than before (e.g. 250x250px instead of 50x50px). This allows to use images with higher resolution.

3.1.0 -> 3.2.0

No changes.

3.0.0 -> 3.1.0

LAM supported to set a list of valid workstations on the "Personal" page. This required to change the LDAP schema. Since 3.1.0 this is replaced by the new "Hosts" module for users.

Lamdaemon: The sudo entry needs to be changed to ".../lamdaemon.pl *".

2.3.0 -> 3.0.0

No changes.

2.2.0 -> 2.3.0

LAM Pro: There is now a separate account type for group of (unique) names. Please edit your server profiles to activate the new account type.

1.1.0 -> 2.2.0

No changes.

Uninstallation of LAM (Pro)

If you used the prepackaged installation packages then remove the ldap-account-manager and ldap-account-manager-lamdaemon packages.

Otherwise, remove the folder where you installed LAM via configure or by copying the files.

Migration to a new server

LAM provides configuration export and import. Use this to transport the configuration to your new server.

To manually move LAM (Pro) from one server to another please follow these steps:

1. Install LAM (Pro) on your new server
2. Copy the following files from the old server to the new one (base directory for RPM/DEB is /usr/share/ldap-account-manager/):
 - config/*.conf
 - config/config.cfg
 - config/pdf/*
 - config/profiles/*
 - config/selfService/*.* (needed for LAM Pro only)

The files must be writable for the webservice user.

3. Open LAM (Pro) login page on new server and verify installation.
4. Uninstall LAM (Pro) on old server.

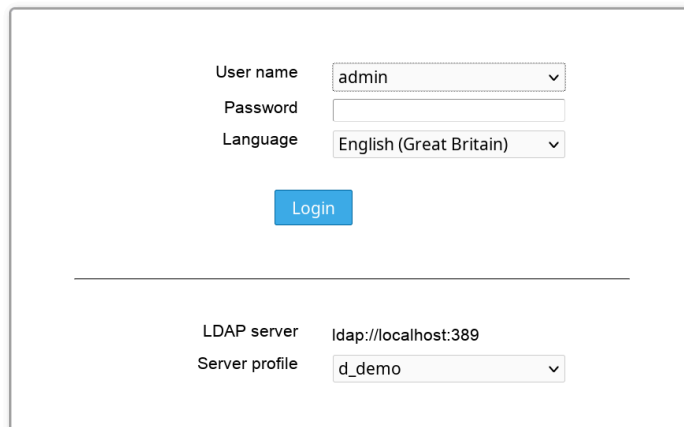
Chapter 3. Configuration

After you installed LAM you can configure it to fit your needs. The complete configuration can be done inside the application. There is no need to edit configuration files.

Please point you browser to the location where you installed LAM. E.g. for Debian/Ubuntu/RPM this is `http://yourServer/lam`. If you installed LAM via the tar.bz2 then this may vary. You should see the following page:

 LDAP Account Manager Pro - 7.9.DEV

LAM configuration

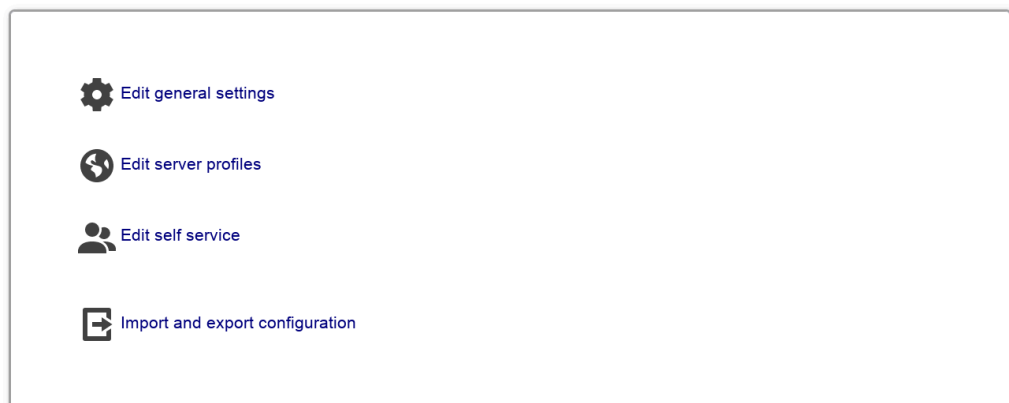


The screenshot shows the LAM login interface. It features a 'User name' dropdown menu with 'admin' selected, a 'Password' text input field, and a 'Language' dropdown menu with 'English (Great Britain)' selected. Below these fields is a blue 'Login' button. A horizontal line separates the login section from the configuration section below. The configuration section includes an 'LDAP server' text input field with 'ldap://localhost:389' and a 'Server profile' dropdown menu with 'd_demo' selected.

If you see an error message then you might need to install an additional PHP extension. Please follow the instructions and reload the page afterwards.

Now you are ready to configure LAM. Click on the "LAM configuration" link to proceed.

 LDAP Account Manager Pro - 7.9.DEV



The screenshot shows the LAM configuration menu. It contains four items, each with an icon and a text label: a gear icon for 'Edit general settings', a globe icon for 'Edit server profiles', a person icon for 'Edit self service', and a document with arrows icon for 'Import and export configuration'.

Here you can change LAM's general settings, setup server profiles for your LDAP server(s) and configure the self service (LAM Pro). You should start with the general settings and then setup a server profile.

General settings

After selecting "Edit general settings" you will need to enter the master configuration password. The default password for new installations is "lam". Now you can edit the general settings.

Configuration Database

This defines where LAM should store the configuration settings. By default, local file system is used. If you have installed the PHP PDO extension incl. MySQL then you can also select MySQL here. This will then store all data (server profiles, account profiles, PDF structures, ...) in the database.

Exceptions:

- Configuration storage options
- LAM Pro license
- CA certificates

This is very useful when running LAM cloud native e.g. inside Docker.

General settings

Configuration storage

Database type	MySQL	?
Database host *	localhost	?
Database port		?
Database name *	lam	?
Database user *	lam	?
Database password *	...	?

License (LAM Pro only)

This is only required when you run LAM Pro. Please enter the license key from your customer profile [<https://www.ldap-account-manager.org/lamcms/user/me>]. In case you have purchased multiple licenses please only enter one license key block per installation.

When you entered the license key then the license details can be seen on LAM configuration overview page.

By default, LAM Pro will show a warning message on the login page 3 weeks before expiration. You can disable this here and/or send out an email instead.

Licence

Licence

Expiration warning: Both

From address *: test@ldap-account-manager.org

TO address *: test@ldap-account-manager.org

Security settings

Here you can set a time period after which inactive sessions are automatically invalidated. The selected value represents minutes of inactivity.

If you do not want to expose why the login to LAM failed then activate "Hide LDAP details on failed logins". This way users will not see if their account was not found or is e.g. locked.

You may also set a list of IP addresses which are allowed to access LAM. The IPs can be specified as full IP (e.g. 123.123.123.123) or with the "*" wildcard (e.g. 123.123.123.*). Users which try to access LAM via an untrusted IP only get blank pages. There is a separate field for LAM Pro self service.

SSL certificate setup:

By default, LAM uses the CA certificates that are preinstalled on your system. This will work if you connect via SSL/TLS to an LDAP server that uses a certificate signed by a well-known CA. In case you use your own CA (e.g. company internal CA) you can import the CA certificates here.

Please note that this can affect other web applications on the same server if they require different certificates. There seem to be problems on Debian/Ubuntu systems and you may also need to restart Apache. In case of any problems please delete the uploaded certificates and use the system setup.

You can either upload a DER/PEM formatted certificate file or import the certificates directly from an LDAP server that is available with LDAP+SSL (ldaps://). LAM will automatically override system certificates if at least one certificate is uploaded/imported.

The whole certificate list can be downloaded in PEM format. You can also delete single certificates from the list.

Please note that you might need to restart your webserver if you do any changes to this configuration.

Common name	Valid to	Serial number	Delete
roland	2021-08-16	10818998085225869741	✗
RG SE CA	2039-04-06	10818998085225869735	✗

Password policy

This allows you to specify a central password policy for LAM. The policy is valid for all password fields inside LAM admin (excluding tree view) and LAM self service. Configuration passwords do not need to follow this policy.

Password policy

Minimum password length	<input type="text" value="4"/>	▼	?
Minimum lowercase characters	<input type="text" value="0"/>	▼	?
Minimum uppercase characters	<input type="text" value="0"/>	▼	?
Minimum numeric characters	<input type="text" value="0"/>	▼	?
Minimum symbolic characters	<input type="text" value="0"/>	▼	?
Minimum character classes	<input type="text" value="0"/>	▼	?
Number of rules that must match	<input type="text" value="all"/>		▼ ?
Password must not contain user name	<input type="checkbox"/>		?
Password must not contain part of user/first/last name	<input type="checkbox"/>		?
External password check	<input type="text"/>		?

You can set the minimum password length and also the complexity of the passwords.

External password check

Please note that this option is only displayed if you have installed the PHP Curl extension for your web server.

This will validate passwords using an external service. LAM supports the protocol used by Have I been Pwned [https://haveibeenpwned.com/API/v2#SearchingPwnedPasswordsByRange]. You can use the service directly or setup any custom service with the same API. If the service reports an error LAM will log an error message and the password will be accepted.

Example URL: https://api.pwnedpasswords.com/range/{SHA1PREFIX}

LAM will build a SHA1 hash of the password and send parts of it to the service.

The configured URL must contain the wildcard "{SHA1PREFIX}" which will be replaced with the 5 character hash prefix. The service must then return a list of text lines in the format "<hash suffix>:<number>".

"<hash suffix>" needs to be the suffix of a known insecure password. The "<number>" can be any numeric value and will be ignored by LAM.

Example:

Password hash: 21BD10018A45C4D1DEF81644B54AB7F969B88D65

Hash prefix sent to service: 21BD1

Returned line: 0018A45C4D1DEF81644B54AB7F969B88D65:1

This will reject the password.

Logging

LAM can log events (e.g. user logins). You can use e.g. system logging (syslog for Unix, event viewer for Windows) or log to a separate file. Please note that LAM may log sensitive data (e.g. passwords) at log level "Debug". Production systems should be set to "Warning" or "Error".

The PHP error reporting is only for developers. By default LAM does not show PHP notice messages in the web pages. You can select to use the php.ini setting here or printing all errors and notices.

Log destinations:

- File: all messages will be written to the given file. LAM will create it if not yet existing.
- Syslog: uses local system logging (syslog for Unix, event viewer for Windows)

- Remote: sends log messages to a remote server that supports the Unix remote Syslogd [https://www.rsyslog.com/] protocol. Please enter destination as "server:port", e.g. "myserver:123".
- No logging: disabled logging

Logging

Log level: Debug

Log destination: File

File: /tmp/lam.log

PHP error reporting: all

Mail options (LAM Pro)

Here you can configure the mail server settings. If you do not set a mail server then LAM will try to use a locally installed one (e.g. postfix, exim, sendmail).

SMTP setup:

Mail server: enter name + port separated by ":". E.g. "server:25" will use "server" on port 25.

User name: enter the user name if your SMTP server requires authentication

Password: enter the password for the user above

Encryption protocol: Use TLS when unsure. SSL is only for older servers and deprecated. The no encryption setting should not be used for production installations.

Mail options

Mail server: [input field]

User name: [input field]

Password: [input field]

Encryption protocol: TLS

WebAuthn/FIDO2 devices

See the WebAuthn/FIDO2 appendix for an overview about WebAuthn/FIDO2 in LAM.

Here you can delete any webauthn device registrations. This section is only shown if at least one device is registered.

Enter a part of the user's DN in the input box and perform a search. LAM will show users and devices that match the search. You can then delete a device registration. If the user has no more registered devices then LAM will ask for registration on next login.

Note: You cannot add any device here. This can only be done by the user during login, webauthn tool or self service.

WebAuthn devices

User DN: [input field]

Search

User	Name	Registration	Last use	Delete
[blurred]	[blurred]	[blurred]	[blurred]	X

Change master password

If you would like to change the master configuration password then enter a new password here.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Change master password". It contains two text input fields: "New master password" and "Reenter password". Below the fields are two buttons: "Save" (highlighted in blue) and "Cancel". A small blue question mark icon is visible to the right of the "New master password" field.

Server profiles

The server profiles store information about your LDAP server (e.g. host name) and what kind of accounts (e.g. users and groups) you would like to manage. There is no limit on the number of server profiles. See the typical scenarios about how to structure your server profiles.

Manage server profiles

Select "Manage server profiles" to open the profile management page.

The screenshot shows a dialog box with the title "Please enter your password to change the server preferences:". It contains a "Profile name" dropdown menu with "d_demo" selected, a "Password" input field, and an "Ok" button. At the bottom of the dialog, there is a button labeled "Manage server profiles" which is highlighted with a red rectangular box.

Here you can create, rename and delete server profiles. The passwords of your server profiles can also be reset.

You may also specify the default server profile. This is the server profile which is preselected at the login page. It also specifies the language of the login and configuration pages.

Templates for new server profiles

You can create a new server profile based on one of the built-in templates or any existing profile. Of course, the account types and selected modules can be changed after you created your profile.

Built-in templates:

- addressbook: simple profile for user management with inetOrgPerson object class
- samba3: Samba 3 users, groups, hosts and domains
- unix: Unix users and groups (posixAccount/Group)
- windows_samba4: Active Directory user, group and host management

Profile management

Add profile

Profile name

Profile password

Reenter password

Template unix

Rename profile

Profile name d_2factorDuo

New profile name

Delete profile

Profile name d_2factorDuo

Set profile password

Profile name d_2factorDuo

Profile password

Reenter password

Change default profile

Profile name d_lam

All operations on the profile management page require that you authenticate yourself with the configuration master password.

Editing a server profile

Please select your server profile and enter its password to edit a server profile.

Please enter your password to change the server preferences:

Profile name d_demo

Password

[Manage server profiles](#)

Each server profile contains the following information:

- **General settings:** general settings about your LDAP server (e.g. host name and security settings)
- **Account types:** list of account types (e.g. users and groups) that you would like to manage and type specific settings (e.g. LDAP suffix)
- **Modules:** list of modules which define what account aspects (e.g. Unix, Samba, Kolab) you would like to manage
- **Module settings:** settings which are specific for the selected account modules on the page before

General settings

Here you can specify the LDAP server and some security settings.

The screenshot shows a configuration interface with a top navigation bar containing 'General settings', 'Account types', 'Modules', 'Module settings', and 'Jobs'. The 'General settings' section is active, displaying 'Server settings'. The 'Server address' field contains 'ldap://localhost:389'. Below it are dropdown menus for 'Activate TLS' (set to 'no'), 'LDAP search limit' (set to '-'), and 'Access level' (set to 'Write access'). There is also a text input for 'DN part to hide'. An 'Advanced options' section is expanded, showing checkboxes for 'Follow referrals', 'Paged results', 'Referential integrity overlay', and 'Hide password prompt for expired password', all of which are currently unchecked. A 'Display name' text input is also present in the advanced options.

The server address of your LDAP server can be a DNS name or an IP address. Use ldap:// for unencrypted LDAP connections or TLS encrypted connections. LDAP+SSL (LDAPS) encrypted connections are specified with ldaps://. The port value is optional. TLS cannot be combined with ldaps://.

Hint: If you use a master/slave setup with referrals then point LAM to your master server. Due to bugs in the underlying LDAP libraries pointing to a slave might cause issues on write operations.

LAM includes an LDAP browser which allows direct modification of LDAP entries. If you would like to use it then enter the LDAP suffix at "Tree suffix".

The search limit is used to reduce the number of search results which are returned by your LDAP server.

The access level specifies if LAM should allow to modify LDAP entries. This feature is only available in LAM Pro. LAM non-Pro releases use write access. See this page for details on the different access levels.

Advanced options

Display name: Sometimes, you may not want to display the server address on the login page. In this case you can setup a display name here (e.g. "Production").

Follow referrals: By default LAM will not follow LDAP referrals. This is ok for most installations. If you use LDAP referrals please activate the referral option in advanced settings.

Paged results: Paged results should be activated only if you encounter any problems regarding size limits on Active Directory. LAM will then query LDAP to return results in chunks of 999 entries.

Referential integrity overlay: Activate this checkbox if you have any server side extension for referential integrity in place. In this case the server will cleanup references to LDAP entries that are deleted.

The following actions are skipped in this case:

- Users: group of (unique) names: memberships are not deleted when user is deleted
- Users: organizational roles: role assignments are not deleted when user is deleted
- Groups: groupOf(Unique)Names: memberships are not deleted when group is deleted

Hide password prompt for expired password: Hides the password prompt when a user with expired password logs into LAM.

LAM is translated to many different languages. Here you can select the default language for this server profile. The language setting may be overridden at the LAM login page.

Please also set your time zone here.

A Language settings

Default language: English (Great Britain) ?

Time zone: Europe/Berlin ?

LAM can manage user home directories and quotas with an external script. You can specify the home directory server and where the script is located. The default rights for new home directories can be set, too.

Note: This requires lamdaemon to be installed on the remote server. This comes as separate package for DEB/RPM. See here.

Script server format:

- "server": "server" is the DNS name of your script server
- "server:NAME": NAME is the display name of this server
- "server:NAME:/prefix": /prefix is the directory prefix for all operations. E.g. creating a home directory "/home/user" would create "/prefix/home/user" then.

You can provide a fixed user name. If you leave the field empty then LAM will use your current account (the account you used to login to LAM).

There are two possibilities to connect to your home directory/quota server:

- SSH key (recommended): Please generate a SSH key pair and provide the location to the **private** key file. If the key is protected by a password you can also specify it here.
- Password: If you do not set a SSH key then LAM will try to connect with your current account (the password you used to login to LAM).

>_ Lamdaemon settings

Server list: localhost ?

Path to external script: /usr/share/ldap-account-manager/lib/lamdaemon.pl ?

User name: admin ?


SSH key file: /data/ssh/secret.key ?

SSH key password: ?

Rights for the home directory ?

	Read	Write	Execute
Owner	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Group	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Other	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>


LAM Pro users may directly set passwords from list view. You can configure if it should be possible to set specific passwords and showing password on screen is allowed.

 **Password reset page settings**

[?](#) Allow setting specific passwords
 [?](#) Allow to display password on screen
 [?](#) Force password change by default
 Default password output [?](#)

LAM Pro users can send out changed passwords to their users. Here you can specify the options for these mails.


If you select "Allow alternate address" then password mails can be sent to any address (e.g. a secondary address if the user account is also bound to the mailbox).

 **Password mail settings**

From address * [?](#)
 Reply-to address [?](#)
 Subject [?](#)
 HTML format [?](#)
 Allow alternate address [?](#)
 Text [?](#)

LAM supports two methods for login:

- Fixed list
- LDAP search

 **Security settings**

Login method [?](#)
 List of valid users * [?](#)







The first one is to specify a fixed list of LDAP DN's that are allowed to login. Please enter one DN per line.

The second one is to let LAM search for the DN in your directory. E.g. if a user logs in with the user name "joe" then LAM will do an LDAP search for this user name. When it finds a matching DN then it will use this to authenticate the user. The wildcard "%USER%" will be replaced by "joe" in this example. This way you can provide login by user name, email address or other LDAP attributes.

Additionally, you can enable HTTP authentication when using "LDAP search". This way the web server is responsible to authenticate your users. LAM will use the given user name + password for the LDAP login. You can also configure this to setup advanced login restrictions (e.g. require group memberships for login). To setup HTTP authentication in Apache please see this link [<http://httpd.apache.org/docs/2.2/howto/auth.html>] and an example for LDAP authentication here.

Hint: LDAP search with group membership check can be done with either HTTP authentication or LDAP overlays like "memberOf" [<http://www.openldap.org/doc/admin24/overlays.html>] or "Dynamic lists" [<http://www.openldap.org/doc/admin24/overlays.html>]. Dynamic lists allow to insert virtual attributes to your user entries. These can then be used for the LDAP filter (e.g. "(&(uid=%USER%)(memberOf=cn=admin,ou=groups,dc=company,dc=com))").


 **Security settings**

Login method	LDAP search	
LDAP suffix *	ou=people,o=test,c=de	
LDAP filter *	uid=%USER%	
Bind user		
Bind password		
HTTP authentication	<input type="checkbox"/>	

 **Global password policy override**

Minimum password length		
Minimum lowercase characters		
Minimum uppercase characters		
Minimum numeric characters		
Minimum symbolic characters		

 **2-factor authentication**

Provider	None	
----------	------	---

 **Profile password**

New password		
Reenter password		

Global password policy override

This allows you to override some password policy options of LAM's global password policy (LAM main configuration). You can increase and decrease the values of the global policy.

 **Global password policy override**

Minimum password length	10	
Minimum lowercase characters		
Minimum uppercase characters		
Minimum numeric characters		
Minimum symbolic characters		

2-factor authentication

LAM supports 2-factor authentication for your users. This means the user will not only authenticate by user+password but also with e.g. a token generated by a mobile device. This adds more security because the token is generated on a physically separated device (typically mobile phone).

🔒 2-factor authentication

Provider	privacyIDEA	?
User name attribute	uid	?
Base URL *	https://localhost	?
Label		?
Optional	<input type="checkbox"/>	?
Disable certificate check	<input type="checkbox"/>	?
Caption		

The token is validated by a second application. LAM currently supports:

- [privacyIdea](https://www.privacyidea.org/) [https://www.privacyidea.org/]
- [YubiKey](https://www.yubico.com/) [https://www.yubico.com/]
- [Duo](https://duo.com/) [https://duo.com/]
- [WebAuthn/FIDO2](https://webauthn.io/) [https://webauthn.io/]
- [Okta](https://www.okta.com/) [https://www.okta.com/]
- [OpenID](https://openid.net/) [https://openid.net/]

Configuration options:

privacyIDEA

- Base URL: please enter the URL of your privacyIDEA instance
- User name attribute: please enter the LDAP attribute name that contains the user ID (e.g. "uid").
- Optional: By default LAM will enforce to use a token and reject users that did not setup one. You can set this check to optional. But if a user has setup a token then this will always be required.
- Disable certificate check: This should be used on development instances only. It skips the certificate check when connecting to verification server.

Please note that LAM needs to authenticate to privacyIdea with the user's user name and password WITHOUT second factor. This is needed to get the list of tokens that are setup for the user. You can setup a separate policy (scope: authentication) for LAM inside privacyIdea that has IP restriction ("Client" setting) to LAM's server IP and an action "otppin" "none".

YubiKey

- Base URLs: please enter the URL(s) of your YubiKey verification server(s). If you run a custom verification API such as yubiserver then enter its URL (e.g. http://www.example.com:8000/wsapi/2.0/verify). The URL

needs to end with "/wsapi/2.0/verify". For YubiKey cloud these are "https://api.yubico.com/wsapi/2.0/verify", "https://api2.yubico.com/wsapi/2.0/verify", "https://api3.yubico.com/wsapi/2.0/verify", "https://api4.yubico.com/wsapi/2.0/verify" and "https://api5.yubico.com/wsapi/2.0/verify". Enter one URL per line.

- Client id: this is only required for YubiKey cloud. You can register here: <https://upgrade.yubico.com/getapikey/>
- Secret key: this is only required for YubiKey cloud. You can register here: <https://upgrade.yubico.com/getapikey/>
- Optional: By default LAM will enforce to use a token and reject users that did not setup one. You can set this check to optional. But if a user has setup a token then this will always be required.
- Disable certificate check: This should be used on development instances only. It skips the certificate check when connecting to verification server.

Duo

This requires to register a new "Web SDK" application in your Duo admin panel.

- User name attribute: please enter the LDAP attribute name that contains the user ID (e.g. "uid").
- Base URL: please enter the API-URL of your Duo instance (e.g. api-12345.duosecurity.com).
- Client id: please enter your client id.
- Secret key: please enter your client secret.

WebAuthn/FIDO2

See the WebAuthn/FIDO2 appendix for an overview about WebAuthn/FIDO2 in LAM.

Users will be asked to register a device during login if no device is setup.

- Domain: Please enter the WebAuthn domain. This is the public domain of the web server (e.g. "example.com"). Do not include protocol or port. Browsers will reject authentication if the domain does not match the web server domain.
- Optional: By default LAM will enforce to use a 2FA device and reject users that do not setup one. You can set this check to optional. But if a user has setup a device then this will always be required.

Okta

This requires to register a new application of type "Web".


There, you will need to configure LAM's 2-factor URLs as "Login redirect URIs" in the new application. They are "<https://YOURDOMAIN/lam/templates/login2Factor.php>" for admin interface and "<https://YOURDOMAIN/lam/templates/selfService/selfService2Factor.php>" for self service. You will get an error message during login with the URL to configure in case it was wrong.

On "Sign On" tab you need to add a rule that prompts for the factor.


LAM options:

- User name attribute: please enter the LDAP attribute name that contains the user ID (e.g. "mail").
- Base URL: please enter the URL of your Okta domain (e.g. <https://mydomain.okta.com>)
- Client id: please enter your application client id.
- Secret key: please enter your application secret key.

← Back to Applications




LAM



Active ▾  [View Logs](#)

General **Sign On** Assignments Okta API Scopes

Client Credentials


[Edit](#)

Client ID 
Public identifier for the client that is required for all OAuth flows.

Client secret  
Secret used by the client to exchange an authorization code for a token. This must be kept confidential! Do not include it in apps which cannot keep it secret, such as those running on a client.

General Settings

[Edit](#)

Okta domain 

APPLICATION

Application label LAM

Application type Web

Allowed grant types


Client acting on behalf of itself

- Client Credentials

Client acting on behalf of a user

- Authorization Code
- Refresh Token
- Implicit (Hybrid)

LOGIN

Login redirect URIs 

OpenID

This will use an OpenID server as 2nd factor for authentication.

LAM options:

- User name attribute: please enter the LDAP attribute name that contains the user ID (e.g. "uid").
- Base URL: please enter the URL of your OpenID client URL. The URL is the one before the "/.well-known/openid-configuration".
- Client id: please enter your application client id.
- Secret key: please enter your application secret key.

KeyCloack example configuration:

Create a new client, select "OpenID Connect" client type and enter a client ID.

Now enable "Client authentication" and enter the valid redirect URLs in the last step.

They are "https://YOURDOMAIN/lam/templates/login2Factor.php" for admin interface and "https://YOURDOMAIN/lam/templates/selfService/selfService2Factor.php" for self service. You will get an error message during login in case it was wrong. Then save the configuration.

Next, switch to tab "Credentials" to get the client secret.

Example configuration values:

- User name: uid
- Base URL: http://openidserver/auth/realms/master
- Client id: demo
- Secret key: 59bdf504-b76e-4138-8421-ef662b2c6c83

Remember device

You can allow users to remember the 2FA device for privacyIDEA, WebAuthn and YubiKey. When a device is remembered then users can login for the specified time without presenting their 2nd factor.

The password for the device remembering is used to authenticate the device data. It can be any long passphrase (use > 30 characters). LAM auto-generates one for you. If you change the passphrase then all device data gets invalid and users need to represent their 2nd factor again (which then can be saved again).

Login

After logging in with user + password LAM will ask for the 2nd factor. If the user has setup multiple factors then he can choose one of them.

Two factor authentication

Please enter your PIN and token.

Serial number
ccccccjclkg, vvgdggkkuhbl, vvfkibevvhrv

Token

Password

You may also change the password of this server profile. Please just enter the new password in both password fields.

Profile password

New password

Reenter password

?

Account types

LAM supports to manage various types of LDAP entries (e.g. users, groups, DHCP entries, ...). On this page you can select which types of entries you want to manage with LAM.

⚙️ General settings

📁 Account types

🗄️ Modules

⚙️ Module settings

🕒 Jobs

Available account types

🔗	Aliases	Alias entries	+
🌟	Asterisk extensions	Asterisk extensions entries	+
📁	Automount entries	Automount entries	+
📄	Billing codes	PyKota billing codes	+
🌐	Bind DNS	Bind DNS entries	+
🔗	Custom type	Custom entries	+
🌐	DHCP	DHCP administration	+
👤	Groups	Group accounts (e.g. Unix and Samba)	+
👤	Groups of names	Group of names accounts	+
🖨️	Hosts	Host accounts (e.g. Samba)	+

The section at the top shows a list of possible types. You can activate them by simply clicking on the plus sign next to it.

Each account type has the following options:

- **LDAP suffix:** the LDAP suffix where entries of this type should be managed
- **List attributes:** a list of attributes which are shown in the account lists
- **Additional LDAP filter:** LAM will automatically detect the right LDAP entries for each account type. This can be used to further limit the number of visible entries (e.g. if you want to manage only some specific groups). You can use "@@LOGIN_DN@@" as wildcard (e.g. "(owner=@@LOGIN_DN@)"). It will be replaced by the DN of the user who is logged in.
- **Hidden:** This is used to hide account types that should not be displayed but are required by other account types. E.g. you can hide the Samba domains account type and still assign domains when you edit your users.
- **Read-only (LAM Pro only):** This allows to set a single account type to read-only mode. Please note that this is a restriction on functional level (e.g. group memberships can be changed on user page even if groups are read-only) and is no replacement for setting up proper ACLs on your LDAP server.
- **Custom label:** Here you can set a custom label for the account types. Use this if the standard label does not fit for you (e.g. enter "Servers" for hosts).
- **No new entries (LAM Pro only):** Use this if you want to prevent that new accounts of this type are created by your users. The GUI will hide buttons to create new entries and also disable file upload for this type.
- **Disallow delete (LAM Pro only):** Use this if you want to prevent that accounts of this type are deleted by your users.

Active account types

Users

User accounts (e.g. Unix, Samba and Kolab)

LDAP suffix *

List attributes

Custom label

Additional LDAP filter

Read-only

Hidden

No new entries

Disallow delete

Groups

Group accounts (e.g. Unix and Samba)

LDAP suffix *

List attributes

Custom label

Additional LDAP filter

Read-only

Hidden

No new entries

Disallow delete

On the next page you can specify in detail what extensions should be enabled for each account type.

Modules

The modules specify the active extensions for each account type. E.g. here you can setup if your user entries should be address book entries only or also support Unix or Samba.

The screenshot shows the 'Users' configuration page with the following modules:

Selected modules	Available modules
Personal (inetOrgPerson)(*)	Account (account)(*)
Unix (posixAccount)	Account locking (locking389ds)
Password policy (ppolicyUser)	AD LDS (windowsLDSUser)(*)
Kopano (kopanoUser)	Asterisk (asteriskAccount)
Custom scripts (customScripts)	Asterisk voicemail (asteriskVoicemail)
	Authorized Services (authorizedServiceObject)

Each account type needs a so called "base module". This is the basement for all LDAP entries of this type. Usually, it provides the structural object class for the LDAP entries. There must be exactly one active base module for each account type.

Furthermore, there may be any number of additional active account modules. E.g. you may select "Personal" as base module and Unix + Samba as additional modules.

Module settings

Depending on the activated account modules there may be additional configuration options available. They can be found on the "Module settings" tab. E.g. the Personal account module allows to hide several input fields and the Unix module requires to specify ranges for UID numbers.

The screenshot shows the 'Module settings' page for the 'Personal' module. It includes a list of 'Hidden options' with checkboxes for various fields:

- Description
- Postal code
- Postal address
- Room number
- Mobile number
- Email address
- Employee type
- Manager
- Employee number
- User certificates
- Street
- Location
- Registered address
- Telephone number
- Fax number
- Job title
- Business category
- Organisational unit
- Initials
- Photo
- Post office box
- State
- Office name
- Home telephone number
- Pager
- Car license
- Department
- Organisation
- Web site
- Display name

Below the 'Personal' module settings, there is a section for the 'Unix' module with the following settings:

- UID generator: Fixed range
- Minimum UID number: 10000
- Maximum UID number: 20000

Cron jobs (LAM Pro)

LAM Pro can execute common tasks via cron job. This can be used to e.g. notify your users before their passwords expire.

LDAP and database configuration

Please add the LDAP bind user and password for all jobs. This LDAP account will be used to perform all LDAP read and write operations.

Next, select the database type where LAM should store job related data. Supported databases are SQLite and MySQL.

SQLite

This is a simple file based database. It needs no special database server. The database file will be located next to the server profile in config directory.

You will need to install the SQLite PDO module for PHP (pdo_sqlite.so). For Debian/Ubuntu this is located in package php-sqlite3.

The screenshot shows a configuration interface with a navigation bar at the top containing: General settings, Account types, Modules, Module settings, and Jobs. The 'Jobs' tab is active. Below the navigation bar, there are three main sections:

- LDAP:** Contains two input fields: 'Bind user' with the value 'cn=administrator,cn=users, [redacted]' and 'Bind password' with a masked value '.....'. Both fields have a help icon (question mark) to their right.
- Database:** Contains a dropdown menu for 'Database type' set to 'SQLite', with a help icon to its right.
- Test settings:** A yellow button labeled 'Test settings'.
- Cron configuration:** Contains a cron job entry: '0 0 * * * [redacted] /cron.sh [redacted]', with a help icon to its right.

MySQL

This will store all job data in an external MySQL database.

You will need to install the MySQL PDO module for PHP (pdo_mysql.so). For Debian/Ubuntu this is located in package php-mysql.

Steps to create a MySQL database and user:

```
# login
mysql -u root -p
# create a database
mysql> create database lam_cron;
#
mysql> CREATE USER 'lam_cron'@'%' IDENTIFIED BY 'password';
mysql> CREATE USER 'lam_cron'@'localhost' IDENTIFIED BY 'password';
# grant access for new user
mysql> GRANT ALL PRIVILEGES ON lam_cron.* TO 'lam_cron'@'%';
mysql> GRANT ALL PRIVILEGES ON lam_cron.* TO 'lam_cron'@'localhost';
```

⚙️ General settings

👤 Account types

📦 Modules

⚙️ Module settings

🕒 Jobs

LDAP

Bind user ?

Bind password ?

Database

Database type ?

Database host* ?

Database port ?

Database name* ?

Database user* ?

Database password* ?

Test settings

Cron configuration

0 0 * * * /cron.sh ?

Test your settings

After the LDAP and database settings are done you can test your settings.

Cron entry

LAM also prints the crontab line that you need to run the configured jobs on a daily basis. The command must be run as the same user as your webserver is running. You are free to change the starting time of the script or run it more often.

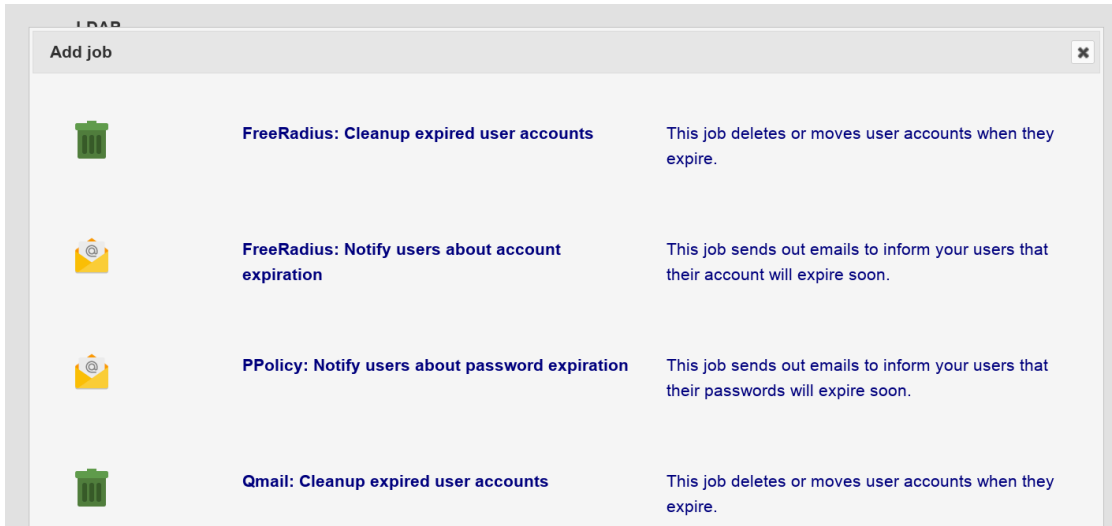
Dry-run: You can perform a dry-run of the job. This will not perform any actions but only print what would be done. For this please put "--dryRun" at the end of the command. E.g.:

```
/usr/share/ldap-account-manager/lib/cron.sh lam 123456789 --dryRun
```

Adding jobs

To add a new job just click on the "Add job" button and select the job type you need. The list of available jobs depends on your active account modules. E.g. the PPolicy job will only be available if you activated PPolicy user module.

Depending on the job type jobs may be added multiple times with different configurations. For descriptions about the available job types see next chapters.



Available jobs:

- PPolicy: Notify users about password expiration
- 389ds: Notify users about password expiration
- Shadow: Notify users about password expiration
- Shadow: Delete or move expired accounts
- Shadow: Notify users about account expiration
- Windows: Notify users about password expiration
- Windows: Notify users about account expiration
- Windows: Delete or move expired accounts
- Windows: Notify users about their managed groups
- FreeRadius: Delete or move expired accounts
- FreeRadius: Notify users about account expiration
- Qmail: Delete or move expired accounts
- Qmail: Notify users about account expiration
- OpenLDAP: Deactivate accounts based on last successful login

PPolicy: Notify users about password expiration

This will send your users an email reminder before their password expires.

You need to activate the PPolicy module for users to be able to add this job. The job can be added multiple times (e.g. to send a second warning at a later time).


LAM calculates the expiration date based on the last password change and the assigned password policy (or the default policy) using attributes `pwdMaxAge` and `pwdExpireWarning`. Negative values are possible to send mails when LDAP's warning time already started.

Examples:

Warning time (pwdExpireWarning) = 14 days, notification period = 10: LAM will send out the email 24 days before the password expires

Warning time (pwdExpireWarning) = 14 days, notification period = 0: LAM will send out the email 14 days before the password expires

No warning time (pwdExpireWarning), notification period = 10: LAM will send out the email 10 days before the password expires

 **PPolicy: Notify users about password expiration**

From address * ?

Reply-to address ?

CC address ?

BCC address ?

Subject ?

HTML format ?

Text ?

Notification period * ?

Default password policy * ?

[Delete this job](#)

Table 3.1. Options

Option	Description
From address	The email address to set as FROM.
Reply-to address	Optional Reply-to address for email.
CC address	Optional CC mail address.
BCC address	Optional BCC mail address.
Subject	The email subject line. Supports wildcards, see below.
Text	The email body text. Supports wildcards, see below.
Notification period	Number of days to notify before password expires.
Default password policy	Default PPolicy password policy entry (object class "pwdPolicy").

Wildcards:

You can enter LDAP attributes as wildcards in the form @@ATTRIBUTE_NAME@@. E.g. to add the user's common name use "@@cn@@". For the common name it would be "@@cn@@".


There are also two special wildcards for the expiration date. @@EXPIRE_DATE_DDMMYYYY@@ will print the date as e.g. "31.12.2016". @@EXPIRE_DATE_YYYYMMDD@@ will print the date as e.g. "2016-12-31".

389ds: Notify users about password expiration

This will send your users an email reminder before their password expires.

You need to activate the Account Locking module for users to be able to add this job. The job can be added multiple times (e.g. to send a second warning at a later time).

LAM calculates the expiration date based on the attribute passwordExpirationTime.

 **389ds: Notify users about password expiration**

From address * ?

Reply-to address ?

CC address ?

BCC address ?

Subject ?

HTML format ?

Text ?

Notification period * ?

[Delete this job](#)

Table 3.2. Options

Option	Description
From address	The email address to set as FROM.
Reply-to address	Optional Reply-to address for email.
CC address	Optional CC mail address.
BCC address	Optional BCC mail address.
Subject	The email subject line. Supports wildcards, see below.
Text	The email body text. Supports wildcards, see below.
Notification period	Number of days to notify before password expires.

Wildcards:

You can enter LDAP attributes as wildcards in the form @@ATTRIBUTE_NAME@@. E.g. to add the user's common name use "@@cn@@" . For the common name it would be "@@cn@@" .

There are also two special wildcards for the expiration date. @@EXPIRE_DATE_DDMMYYYY@@ will print the date as e.g. "31.12.2016". @@EXPIRE_DATE_YYYYMMDD@@ will print the date as e.g. "2016-12-31".

Shadow: Notify users about password expiration

This will send your users an email reminder before their password expires.


You need to activate the Shadow module for users to be able to add this job. The job can be added multiple times (e.g. to send a second warning at a later time).

LAM calculates the expiration date based on the last password change, the password warning time (attribute "shadowWarning") and the specified notification period. Negative values are possible to send mails when Shadow's warning time already started.

Examples:

Warning time = 14, notification period = 10: LAM will send out the email 24 days before the password expires

Warning time = 14, notification period = 0: LAM will send out the email 14 days before the password expires

 **Shadow: Notify users about password expiration**

From address * ?

Reply-to address ?

CC address ?

BCC address ?

Subject ?

HTML format ?

Text ?

Notification period * ?

[Delete this job](#)

Table 3.3. Options

Option	Description
From address	The email address to set as FROM.
Reply-to address	Optional Reply-to address for email.
CC address	Optional CC mail address.
BCC address	Optional BCC mail address.
Subject	The email subject line. Supports wildcards, see below.
Text	The email body text. Supports wildcards, see below.
Notification period	Number of days to notify before password expires.


Wildcards:

You can enter LDAP attributes as wildcards in the form @@ATTRIBUTE_NAME@@. E.g. to add the user's common name use "@@cn@@". For the common name it would be "@@cn@@".

There are also two special wildcards for the expiration date. @@EXPIRE_DATE_DDMMYYYY@@ will print the date as e.g. "31.12.2016". @@EXPIRE_DATE_YYYYMMDD@@ will print the date as e.g. "2016-12-31".

Shadow: Delete or move expired accounts

You can automatically delete or move expired accounts. The job checks Shadow account expiration dates (not password expiration dates).

 **Shadow: Cleanup expired user accounts**

Delay ?

Action ?

[Delete this job](#)


Table 3.4. Options

Option	Description
Delay	Number of days to wait after the account is expired.
Action	Delete or move accounts
Target DN	Move only: specifies the DN where accounts are moved

Shadow: Notify users about account expiration

This will send your users an email reminder before their whole account expires.

You need to activate the Shadow module for users to be able to add this job. The job can be added multiple times (e.g. to send a second warning at a later time).

 **Shadow: Notify users about account expiration**

From address * ?

Reply-to address ?

CC address ?

BCC address ?

Subject ?

HTML format ?

Text ?

Notification period * ?

[Delete this job](#)

Table 3.5. Options

Option	Description
From address	The email address to set as FROM.
Reply-to address	Optional Reply-to address for email.
CC address	Optional CC mail address.
BCC address	Optional BCC mail address.
Subject	The email subject line. Supports wildcards, see below.
Text	The email body text. Supports wildcards, see below.
Notification period	Number of days to notify before account expires.

Wildcards:

You can enter LDAP attributes as wildcards in the form @@ATTRIBUTE_NAME@@. E.g. to add the user's common name use "@@cn@@". For the common name it would be "@@cn@@".


There are also two special wildcards for the expiration date. @@EXPIRE_DATE_DDMMYYYY@@ will print the date as e.g. "31.12.2016". @@EXPIRE_DATE_YYYYMMDD@@ will print the date as e.g. "2016-12-31".

Windows: Notify users about password expiration

This will send your users an email reminder before their password expires.

You need to activate the Windows module for users to be able to add this job. The job can be added multiple times (e.g. to send a second warning at a later time).

LAM calculates the expiration date based on the last password change and the domain policy.

 **Windows: Notify users about password expiration**

From address * ?

Reply-to address ?

CC address ?

BCC address ?

Subject ?

HTML format ?

Text ?

Notification period * ?

[Delete this job](#)

Table 3.6. Options

Option	Description
From address	The email address to set as FROM.
Reply-to address	Optional Reply-to address for email.
CC address	Optional CC mail address.
BCC address	Optional BCC mail address.
Subject	The email subject line. Supports wildcards, see below.
Text	The email body text. Supports wildcards, see below.
Notification period	Number of days to notify before password expires.

Wildcards:


You can enter LDAP attributes as wildcards in the form @@ATTRIBUTE_NAME@@. E.g. to add the user's common name use "@@cn@@". For the common name it would be "@@cn@@".

There are also two special wildcards for the expiration date. @@EXPIRE_DATE_DDMMYYYY@@ will print the date as e.g. "31.12.2016". @@EXPIRE_DATE_YYYYMMDD@@ will print the date as e.g. "2016-12-31".

Windows: Notify users about account expiration

This will send your users an email reminder before their whole account expires.

You need to activate the Windows module for users to be able to add this job. The job can be added multiple times (e.g. to send a second warning at a later time).

 **Windows: Notify users about account expiration**

From address * ?

Reply-to address ?

CC address ?

BCC address ?

Subject ?

HTML format ?

Text ?

Notification period * ?

[Delete this job](#)

Table 3.7. Options

Option	Description
From address	The email address to set as FROM.
Reply-to address	Optional Reply-to address for email.
CC address	Optional CC mail address.
BCC address	Optional BCC mail address.
Subject	The email subject line. Supports wildcards, see below.
Text	The email body text. Supports wildcards, see below.
Notification period	Number of days to notify before account expires.

Wildcards:

You can enter LDAP attributes as wildcards in the form @@ATTRIBUTE_NAME@@. E.g. to add the user's common name use "@@cn@@". For the common name it would be "@@cn@@".

There are also two special wildcards for the expiration date. @@EXPIRE_DATE_DDMMYYYY@@ will print the date as e.g. "31.12.2016". @@EXPIRE_DATE_YYYYMMDD@@ will print the date as e.g. "2016-12-31".

Windows: Delete or move expired accounts

You can automatically delete or move expired accounts.

The screenshot shows a configuration window titled "Windows: Cleanup expired user accounts". It features a green trash can icon on the left. On the right, there are two settings: "Delay" set to "14" and "Action" set to "Delete". Both settings have a blue question mark icon to their right. At the bottom left, there is a red button labeled "Delete this job".


Table 3.8. Options

Option	Description
Delay	Number of days to wait after the account is expired.
Action	Delete or move accounts
Target DN	Move only: specifies the DN where accounts are moved

Windows: Notify users about their managed groups

This will send your users an email with the groups they manage. This also includes a list of users in these groups. The users and groups are searched using the user+group account types that are specified in server profile.

You need to activate the Windows module for users to be able to add this job. The job can be added multiple times.

 **Windows: Notify users about their managed groups**

From address * ?

Reply-to address ?

CC address ?

BCC address ?

Subject ?

HTML format ?

Text ?

Period ?

[Delete this job](#)

Table 3.9. Options

Option	Description
From address	The email address to set as FROM.
Reply-to address	Optional Reply-to address for email.
CC address	Optional CC mail address.
BCC address	Optional BCC mail address.
Subject	The email subject line. Supports wildcards, see below.
HTML format	Send email as HTML instead of plain text.
Text	The email body text. Supports wildcards, see below.
Period	Defines how often the mail is sent (e.g. quarterly).


Wildcards:

You can enter LDAP attributes as wildcards in the form @@ATTRIBUTE_NAME@. E.g. to add the user's common name use "@@cn@". For the common name it would be "@@cn@".

Use the wildcard "@@LAM_MANAGED_GROUPS@" to insert the group listing. This wildcard is mandatory.

FreeRadius: Delete or move expired accounts

You can automatically delete or move expired accounts.

 **FreeRadius: Cleanup expired user accounts**

Delay ?

Action ?

[Delete this job](#)


Table 3.10. Options

Option	Description
Delay	Number of days to wait after the account is expired.
Action	Delete or move accounts
Target DN	Move only: specifies the DN where accounts are moved

FreeRadius: Notify users about account expiration

This will send your users an email reminder before their FreeRadius account expires.

You need to activate the FreeRadius module for users to be able to add this job. The job can be added multiple times (e.g. to send a second warning at a later time).

 **FreeRadius: Notify users about account expiration**

From address* ?

Reply-to address ?

CC address ?

BCC address ?

Subject ?

HTML format ?

Text ?

Notification period* ?

[Delete this job](#)

Table 3.11. Options

Option	Description
From address	The email address to set as FROM.
Reply-to address	Optional Reply-to address for email.
CC address	Optional CC mail address.
BCC address	Optional BCC mail address.
Subject	The email subject line. Supports wildcards, see below.
Text	The email body text. Supports wildcards, see below.
Notification period	Number of days to notify before account expires.

Wildcards:

You can enter LDAP attributes as wildcards in the form @@ATTRIBUTE_NAME@@. E.g. to add the user's common name use "@@cn@@". For the common name it would be "@@cn@@".

There are also two special wildcards for the expiration date. @@EXPIRE_DATE_DDMMYYYY@@ will print the date as e.g. "31.12.2016". @@EXPIRE_DATE_YYYYMMDD@@ will print the date as e.g. "2016-12-31".

Qmail: Delete or move expired accounts

You can automatically delete or move expired accounts. The job reads the qmail deletion date of user accounts.

 **Qmail: Cleanup expired user accounts**

Delay ?

Action ?

[Delete this job](#)


Table 3.12. Options

Option	Description
Delay	Number of days to wait after the account is expired.
Action	Delete or move accounts
Target DN	Move only: specifies the DN where accounts are moved

Qmail: Notify users about account expiration

This will send your users an email reminder before their Qmail account expires.

You need to activate the Qmail module for users to be able to add this job. The job can be added multiple times (e.g. to send a second warning at a later time).

 **Qmail: Notify users about account expiration**

From address * ?

Reply-to address ?

CC address ?

BCC address ?

Subject ?

HTML format ?

Text ?

Notification period * ?

[Delete this job](#)

Table 3.13. Options

Option	Description
From address	The email address to set as FROM.
Reply-to address	Optional Reply-to address for email.
CC address	Optional CC mail address.
BCC address	Optional BCC mail address.
Subject	The email subject line. Supports wildcards, see below.
Text	The email body text. Supports wildcards, see below.
Notification period	Number of days to notify before account expires.

Wildcards:


You can enter LDAP attributes as wildcards in the form @@ATTRIBUTE_NAME@@. E.g. to add the user's common name use "@@cn@@". For the common name it would be "@@cn@@".

There are also two special wildcards for the expiration date. @@EXPIRE_DATE_DDMMYYYY@@ will print the date as e.g. "31.12.2016". @@EXPIRE_DATE_YYYYMMDD@@ will print the date as e.g. "2016-12-31".

OpenLDAP: Deactivate accounts based on last successful login

This job deactivates all users that did not perform a successful login for a given time. It requires OpenLDAP with activated "lastBind" and "PPolicy" overlays.

You need to activate the Last login (lastBind) module for users to be able to add this job.

 **OpenLDAP: Deactivate accounts based on last successful login**

Delay ?

[Delete this job](#)

Table 3.14. Options

Option	Description
--------	-------------

Delay	The number of days after the last successful login when to deactivate the account.
-------	--

Job history

This will show the list of all executed job runs and their result.

⚙️ General settings
👤 Account types
🗄️ Modules
⚙️ Module settings
🕒 Jobs

Job history

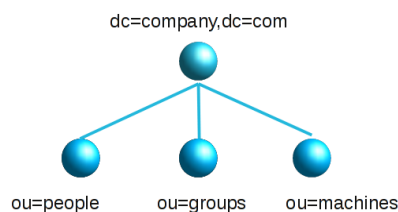
Name	Time	Result	Messages
Windows: Cleanup expired user accounts (1063595495311)	2016-07-17 10:20:33	Ok	
Windows: Cleanup expired user accounts (1063595495311)	2016-07-17 10:20:14	Ok	
Windows: Cleanup expired user accounts (1063595495311)	2016-07-17 10:20:13	Ok	
Windows: Cleanup expired user accounts (1063595495311)	2016-07-17 10:19:38	Ok	
Windows: Cleanup expired user accounts (1063595495311)	2016-07-17 10:19:18	Ok	

Typical scenarios

This is a list of typical scenarios how your LDAP environment may look like and how to structure the server profiles for it.

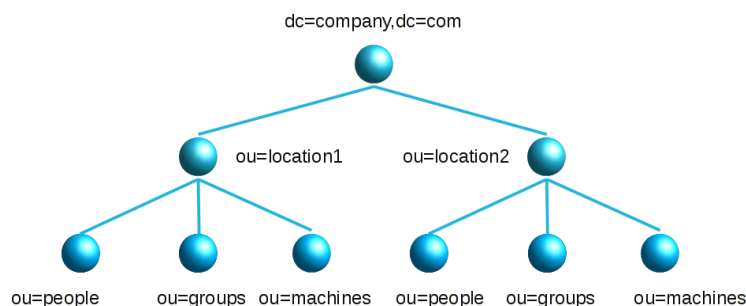
Simple: One LDAP directory managed by a small group of admins

This is the easiest and most common scenario. You want to manage a single LDAP server and there is only one or a few admins. In this case just create one server profile and you are done. The admins may be either specified as a fixed list or by using an LDAP search at login time.



Advanced: One LDAP server which is managed by different admin groups

Large organisations may have one big LDAP directory for all user/group accounts. But the users are managed by different groups of admins (e.g. departments, locations, subsidiaries, ...). The users are typically divided into organisational units in the LDAP tree. Admins may only manage the users in their part of the tree.

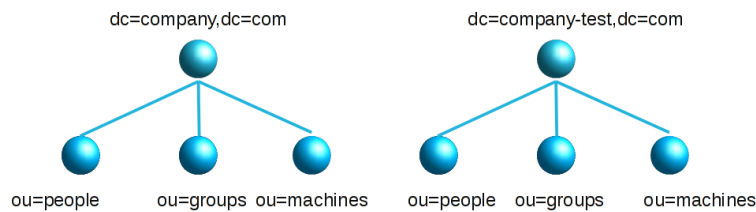


In this situation it is recommended to create one server profile for each admin group (e.g. department). Setup the LDAP suffixes in the server profiles to point to the needed organisational units. E.g. use `ou=people,ou=department1,dc=company,dc=com` or `ou=department1,ou=people,dc=company,dc=com` as LDAP suffix for users. Do the same for groups, hosts, ... This way each admin group will only see its own users. You may want to use LDAP search for the LAM login in this scenario. This will prevent that you need to update a server profile if the number of admins changes.

Attention: LAM's feature to automatically find free UIDs/GIDs for new users/groups will not work in this case. LAM uses the user/group suffix to search for already assigned UIDs/GIDs. As an alternative you can specify different UID/GID ranges for each department. Then the UIDs/GIDs will stay unique for the whole directory.

Multiple LDAP servers

You can manage as many LDAP servers with LAM as you wish. This scenario is similar to the advanced scenario above. Just create one server profile for each LDAP server.



Single LDAP directory with lots of users (>10 000)

LAM was tested to work with 10 000 users. If you have a lot more users then you have basically two options.

- Divide your LDAP tree in organisational units: This is usually the best performing option. Put your accounts in several organisational units and setup LAM as in the advanced scenario above.
- Increase memory limit: Increase the `memory_limit` parameter in your `php.ini`. This will allow LAM to read more entries. But this will slow down the response times of LAM.

Self Service (LAM Pro)

See Self Service chapter.

Import and export configuration

Here you can export and import LAM's whole configuration. You can use this to backup the configuration or migrate from one server to another.

You will need to login with the configuration master password to use this feature.

Export

[Export](#)

Import

No file selected.

[Submit](#)

[Back to login](#)

Chapter 4. Managing entries in your LDAP directory

This chapter will give you instructions how to manage the different LDAP entries in your directory.

Please note that not all account types are manageable with the free LAM release. LAM Pro provides some more account types (e.g. group of names, aliases, ...) and modules (e.g. Kopano, custom scripts, ...) to support additional LDAP object classes. All LAM Pro features are marked in this manual.

Basic page layout:

After the login LAM will present you its main page. It consists of a header part which is equal for all pages and the content area which covers most the of the page.

The header part includes the links to manage all account types (e.g. users and groups). There is also the logout link and a tools entry.

When you login the you will see an account listing in the content area.

LDAP Account Manager Pro - 7.9.DEV d_demo - admin Accounts Tools Help

Users

New user File upload Delete selected users demo > People > test > de

User count: 12

Actions	User name	First name	Last name	UID number	GID number	Account status
Sort sequence						
<input type="checkbox"/> Filter						
<input type="checkbox"/>	cbach	Claudia	Bach	15429	11819	
<input type="checkbox"/>	ebaecker	Ernst	Bäcker	15430	10815	
<input type="checkbox"/>	fhuber	Franz	Huber	26137	10816	
<input type="checkbox"/>	hmeier	Helmut	Meier	26139	10817	
<input type="checkbox"/>	hschuster	Heinz	Schuster	15427	10815	
<input type="checkbox"/>	kmontag	Kerstin	Montag	26141	11820	
<input type="checkbox"/>	mfischer	Monika	Fischer	15425	11820	
<input type="checkbox"/>	rmontag	Ramona	Montag	26140	11819	
<input type="checkbox"/>	shuber	Sepp	Huber	15419	10815	
<input type="checkbox"/>	smiller	Steve	Miller	26142	11820	
<input type="checkbox"/>	thausner	Thomas	Hauser	15423	10815	
<input type="checkbox"/>	xmontag	Xaver	Montag	26136	10816	

Here you can create, delete and modify accounts. Use the action buttons at the left or double click on an entry to edit it.

The suffix selection box allows you to list only the accounts which are located in a subtree of your LDAP directory.

Change list settings

Maximum list entries 100 ?

Translate GID number to group name

Show account status

OK Cancel

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

You can change the number of shown entries per page with "Change settings". Depending on the account type there may be additional settings. E.g. the user list can convert group numbers to group names.

When you select to edit an entry then LAM will show all its data on a tabbed view. There is one tab for each functional part of the account. You can set default values by loading an account profile.

Save Set password Delete Reset changes Back to user list default Load profile

Claudia Bach claudia.bach@ldap-account-manager.org Telephone number 0123-4567-8900 Mobile number 0123-4567-8922

Suffix demo > People > test > de RDN identifier uid

Personal
Unix
Password policy
Custom scripts

First name Claudia
Last name * Bach
Initials
Description Claudia Bach
Delete photo

Address

Street MyStreet 123
Post office box 123456789
Postal code 12345
Location
State
Postal address
Registered address
Office name
Room number A 1.23

Contact data

Telephone number 0123-4567-8900
Home telephone number 0123-4567-8911
Mobile number 0123-4567-8922
Fax number
Email address claudia.bach@ldap-account-mar
Web site

Typical usage scenarios

Here is a list of typical usage scenarios and what account types and modules you need to configure.

Address book entries:

Account types:

- Users (Personal)

Unix accounts:

Account types:

- Users (Personal + Unix)
- Groups (Unix (posixGroup))

Suse users may need to use Group (Group of names + Unix (rfc2307bisPosixGroup)) because of Suse's special LDAP schema.

Samba 3 accounts:

Account types:

- Users (Personal + User + Samba 3)
- Groups (Unix + Samba 3)
- Hosts (Account + Unix + Samba 3)
- Samba domains (Samba domain)

Samba 4/Active Directory:

Account types:

- Users (Windows)
- Groups (Windows)
- Hosts (Windows)

Please note that must change the attributes that are shown in the account lists. Otherwise, the account tables will show empty lines. See the documentation for the Windows user/group/host modules.

For Samba 4 with Kopano use the following modules:

- Users (Windows + Kopano (+ Kopano contact))
- Groups (Windows + Kopano)
- Hosts (Windows + Kopano)
- Kopano dynamic groups (Kopano dynamic group)
- Kopano address lists (Kopano address list)

See also the Kopano section for additional settings (e.g. using Kopano AD schema).

Asterisk:

Account types:

- Users (Personal + Asterisk)
- Asterisk extensions (Asterisk extension)

Kopano:

Account types:

- Users (Personal + Unix + Kopano (+ Kopano contact))
- Groups (Unix + Kopano)
- Kopano dynamic groups (Kopano dynamic group)
- Kopano address lists (Kopano address list)

- Hosts (Device + Kopano + IP Address)

PyKota:

Account types:

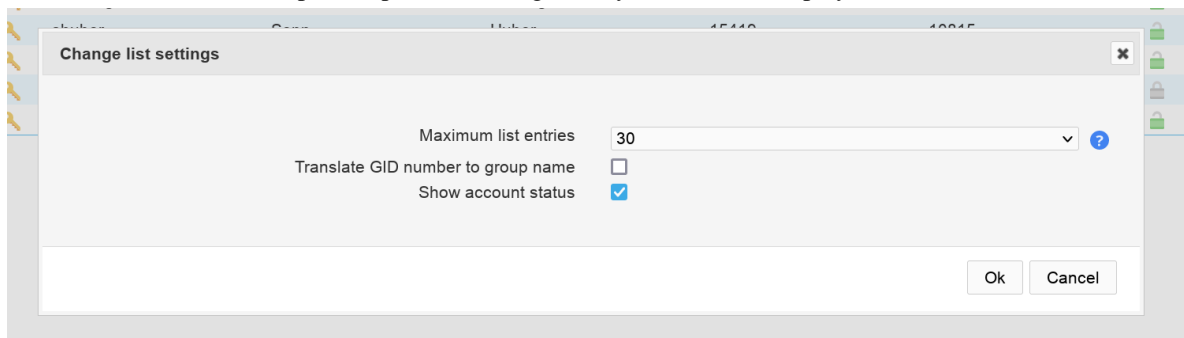
- Users (Personal + Unix + PyKota)
- Groups (Unix + PyKota)
- Printers (PyKota)
- Billing codes (PyKota)

Users

LAM manages various types of user accounts. This includes address book entries, Unix, Samba, Kopano and much more.

Account list settings:

The user list includes two special options to change how your users are displayed.























































Translate GID number to group name: By default the user list can show the primary group IDs (GIDs) of your users. There are often cases where it is more suitable to show the group name instead. This can be done by activating this option. Please note that LAM will execute more LDAP queries which may result in decreased performance.

Actions	User name	First name	Last name	UID number	GID number
Sort sequence	▼ ▲	▼ ▲	▼ ▲	▼ ▲	▼ ▲
<input type="checkbox"/> Filter	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	cbach	Claudia	Bach	15429	admins
<input type="checkbox"/>	ebaecker	Ernst	Bäcker	15430	project1
<input type="checkbox"/>	fhuber	Franz	Huber	26137	project2
<input type="checkbox"/>	hmeier	Helmut	Meier	26139	project3
<input type="checkbox"/>	hschuster	Heinz	Schuster	15427	project1
<input type="checkbox"/>	kmontag	Kerstin	Montag	26141	users
<input type="checkbox"/>	mfischer	Monika	Fischer	15425	users
<input type="checkbox"/>	rmontag	Ramona	Montag	26140	admins
<input type="checkbox"/>	shuber	Sepp	Huber	15419	project1
<input type="checkbox"/>	smiller	Steve	Miller	26142	users
<input type="checkbox"/>	thauser	Thomas	Hauser	15423	project1
<input type="checkbox"/>	xmontag	Xaver	Montag	26136	project2

Show account status: If you activate this option then there will be an additional column displayed that shows if the account is locked or expired. You can see more details when moving the mouse cursor over the lock icon. This function supports Unix, Samba, PPolicy, Windows and 389ds locking+deactivation.

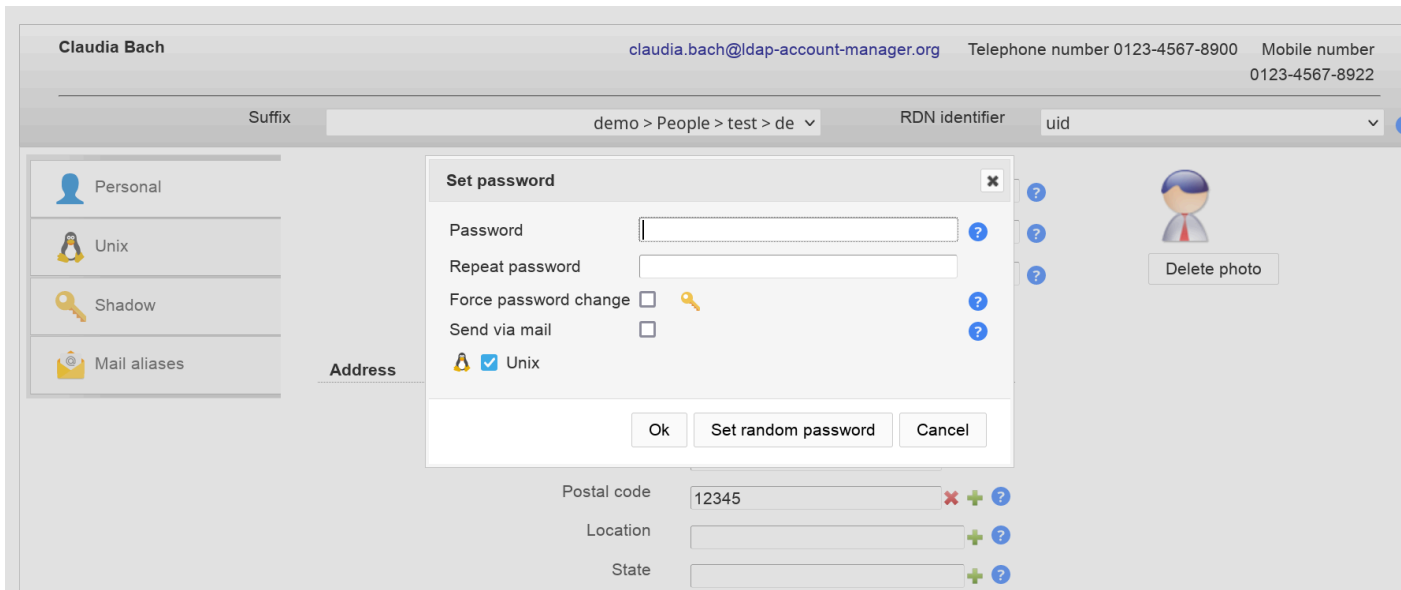
Managing entries in your LDAP directory

Actions	User name	First name	Last name	UID number	GID number	Account status
Sort sequence	▼ ▲	▼ ▲	▼ ▲	▼ ▲	▼ ▲	▼ ▲
<input type="checkbox"/> Filter ▼	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>    	cbach	Claudia	Bach	15429	11819	
<input type="checkbox"/>    	ebaecker	Ernst	Bäcker	15430	10815	
<input type="checkbox"/>    	fhuber	Franz	Huber	26137	10816	
<input type="checkbox"/>    	hmeier	Helmut	Meier	26139	10817	
<input type="checkbox"/>    	hschuster	Heinz	Schuster	15427	10815	
<input type="checkbox"/>    	kmontag	Kerstin	Montag	26141	11820	
<input type="checkbox"/>    	mfischer	Monika	Fischer	15425	11820	
<input type="checkbox"/>    	rmontag	Ramona	Montag	26140	11819	
<input type="checkbox"/>    	shuber	Sepp	Huber	15419	10815	
<input type="checkbox"/>    	smiller	Steve	Miller	26142	11820	
<input type="checkbox"/>    	thausner	Thomas	Hauser	15423	10815	
<input type="checkbox"/>    	xmontag	Xaver	Montag	26136	10816	

Password:

Click the "Set password" button to change the user's password(s). Depending on the active account modules LAM will offer to change multiple passwords at the same time.

If a module supports to enforce a password change then you will see the appropriate checkbox. LAM Pro also offers to send the password via email after the account is saved. Email options are specified in your LAM server profile.



The screenshot shows the user management interface for Claudia Bach. The user's email is claudia.bach@ldap-account-manager.org, telephone number is 0123-4567-8900, and mobile number is 0123-4567-8922. The user is currently in the 'demo > People > test > de' suffix. The 'Set password' dialog box is open, showing the following options:

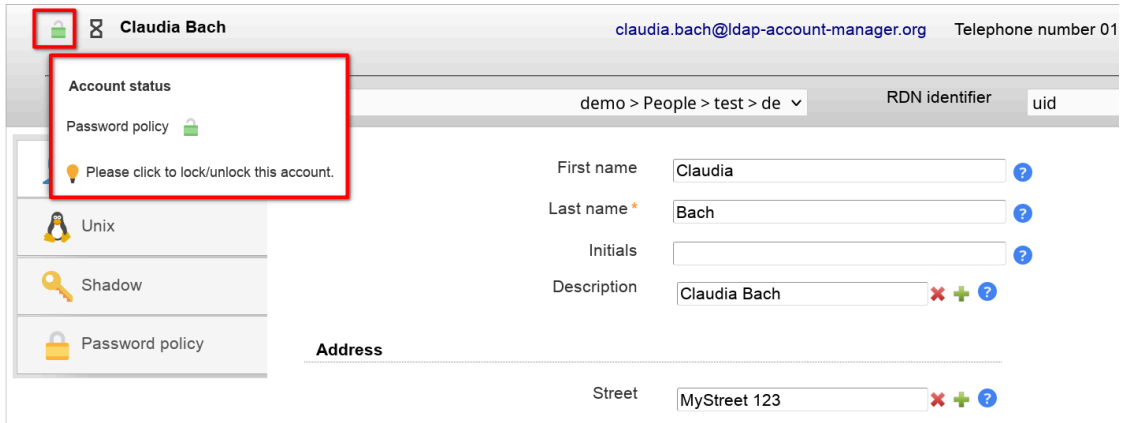
- Force password change:
- Send via mail:
- Address: Unix

Buttons: Ok, Set random password, Cancel.

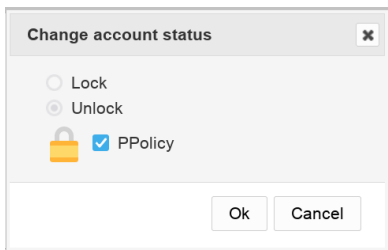
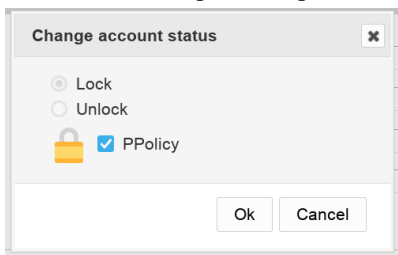
Quick account (un)locking:

When you edit an user then LAM supports to quickly lock/unlock the whole account. This includes Unix, Samba and PPolicy. LAM can also remove group memberships if an account is locked.

You will see the current status of all account parts in the title area of the account.



If you click on the lock icon then a dialog will be opened to change these values. Depending on which parts are locked LAM will provide options to lock/unlock account parts.



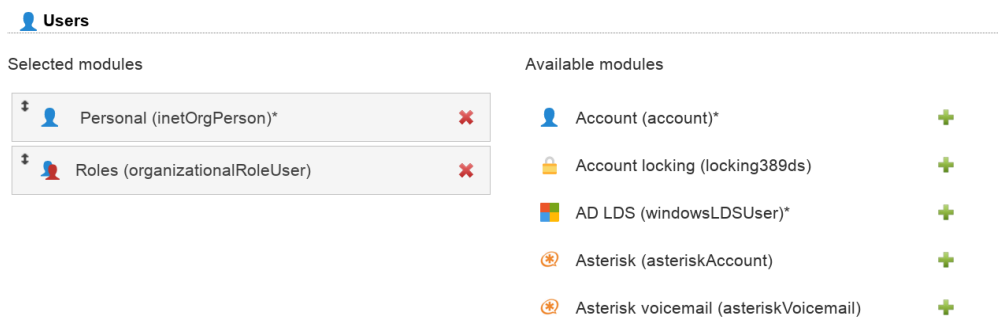
Personal

This module is the most common basis for user accounts in LAM. You can use it stand-alone to manage address book entries or in combination with Unix, Samba or other modules.

The Personal module provides support for managing various personal data of your users including mail addresses and telephone numbers. You can also add photos of your users. If you do not need to manage all attributes then you can deactivate them in your server profile.

Configuration

Please activate the module "Personal (inetOrgPerson)" for users.



Managing entries in your LDAP directory

The module manages lots of fields. Probably, you will not need all of them. You can hide fields in module settings.

In advanced options you may also set fields to read-only (for existing accounts) and define limits for photo files. Additionally, you can add an "ou=addressbook" subentry to each user in case you manage user addressbooks.

Personal

Password hash type: ?

Hidden options ?

Description	<input type="checkbox"/>	Street	<input type="checkbox"/>	Post office box	<input type="checkbox"/>
Postal code	<input type="checkbox"/>	Location	<input type="checkbox"/>	State	<input type="checkbox"/>
Postal address	<input type="checkbox"/>	Registered address	<input type="checkbox"/>	Office name	<input type="checkbox"/>
Room number	<input type="checkbox"/>	Telephone number	<input type="checkbox"/>	Home telephone number	<input type="checkbox"/>
Mobile number	<input type="checkbox"/>	Fax number	<input type="checkbox"/>	Pager	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Email address	<input type="checkbox"/>	Job title	<input type="checkbox"/>	Car license	<input type="checkbox"/>
Employee type	<input type="checkbox"/>	Business category	<input type="checkbox"/>	Department	<input type="checkbox"/>
Manager	<input type="checkbox"/>	Organisational unit	<input type="checkbox"/>	Organisation	<input type="checkbox"/>
Employee number	<input type="checkbox"/>	Initials	<input type="checkbox"/>	Web site	<input type="checkbox"/>
User certificates	<input type="checkbox"/>	Photo	<input type="checkbox"/>	Display name	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
User name	<input type="checkbox"/>				

Advanced options

Add addressbook (ou=addressbook) ?

Read-only fields

Business category	<input type="checkbox"/>	Car license	<input type="checkbox"/>	Common name	<input type="checkbox"/>
Department	<input type="checkbox"/>	Description	<input type="checkbox"/>	Email address	<input type="checkbox"/>
Employee number	<input type="checkbox"/>	Employee type	<input type="checkbox"/>	Fax number	<input type="checkbox"/>
First name	<input type="checkbox"/>	Home telephone number	<input type="checkbox"/>	Initials	<input type="checkbox"/>
Job title	<input type="checkbox"/>	Last name	<input type="checkbox"/>	Location	<input type="checkbox"/>
Manager	<input type="checkbox"/>	Mobile number	<input type="checkbox"/>	Office name	<input type="checkbox"/>
Organisation	<input type="checkbox"/>	Organisational unit	<input type="checkbox"/>	Pager	<input type="checkbox"/>
Password	<input type="checkbox"/>	Photo	<input type="checkbox"/>	Post office box	<input type="checkbox"/>
Postal address	<input type="checkbox"/>	Postal code	<input type="checkbox"/>	Registered address	<input type="checkbox"/>
Room number	<input type="checkbox"/>	State	<input type="checkbox"/>	Street	<input type="checkbox"/>
Telephone number	<input type="checkbox"/>	User name	<input type="checkbox"/>	Web site	<input type="checkbox"/>

Photo

Maximum width (px) ?

Maximum height (px) ?

Maximum file size (kB)

User management

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

Claudia Bach
claudia.bach@dap-account-manager.org
Telephone number 0123-4567-8900
Mobile number 0123-4567-8922

Suffix
demo > People > test > de
RDN identifier
uid

Personal

Roles

User name	<input type="text" value="cbach"/>	?
First name	<input type="text" value="Claudia"/>	?
Last name *	<input type="text" value="Bach"/>	?
Initials	<input type="text"/>	?
Common name *	<input type="text" value="Claudia Bach"/>	✖ + ?
Description	<input type="text" value="Claudia Bach"/>	✖ + ?

Address

Street	<input type="text" value="MyStreet 123"/>	✖ + ?
Post office box	<input type="text" value="123456789"/>	✖ + ?
Postal code	<input type="text" value="12345"/>	✖ + ?
Location	<input type="text"/>	+ ?
State	<input type="text"/>	+ ?
Postal address	<input type="text"/>	
		+ ?
Registered address	<input type="text"/>	
		+ ?
Office name	<input type="text"/>	+ ?
Room number	<input type="text" value="A 1.23"/>	?

Contact data

Telephone number	<input type="text" value="0123-4567-8900"/>	✖ + ?
Home telephone number	<input type="text" value="0123-4567-8911"/>	✖ + ?
Mobile number	<input type="text" value="0123-4567-8922"/>	✖ + ?
Fax number	<input type="text"/>	+ ?
Email address	<input type="text" value="claudia.bach@dap-account-mar"/>	✖ + ?
Web site	<input type="text"/>	+ ?

Delete photo

User certificates can be uploaded and downloaded. LAM will automatically convert PEM to DER format.

Claudia Bach
claudia.bach@dap-account-manager.org
Telephone number 0123-4567-8900
Mobile number 0123-4567-8922

Suffix
demo > People > test > de
RDN identifier
uid

Personal

Roles

	✖ 14476788081586606336: /C=DE/ST=Bavaria/L=City/O=RGSE/CN=test
	✖ 15038736106651474403: /C=DE/ST=Bavaria/L=City/O=RGSE/CN=test3
	✖ 17839378481148738733: /C=DE/ST=Bavaria/L=City/O=RGSE/CN=test2

New user certificate No file selected.

Table 4.1. LDAP attribute mappings

Attribute name	Name inside LAM
businessCategory	Business category
carLicense	Car license
cn/commonName	Common name
departmentNumber	Department(s)
description	Description
employeeNumber	Employee number
employeeType	Employee type
facsimileTelephoneNumber/fax	Fax number
givenName/gn	First name
homePhone	Home telephone number
initials	Initials
jpegPhoto	Photo
l	Location
labeledURI	Web site
mail/rfc822Mailbox	Email address
manager	Manager
mobile/mobileTelephoneNumber	Mobile number
organizationName/o	Organisation
ou	Organizational unit
pager	Pager number
physicalDeliveryOfficeName	Office name
postalAddress	Postal address
postalCode	Postal code
postOfficeBox	Post office box
registeredAddress	Registered address
roomNumber	Room number
sn/surname	Last name
st	State
street/streetAddress	Street
telephoneNumber	Telephone number
title	Job title
userCertificate	User certificates
uid/userid	User name
userPassword	Password

Wildcards

This module provides the following wildcards (others may be provided by other modules). Add a "_" after the "\$" to get the value in lower-case (e.g. "\$_firstname").

- \$firstname: First name
- \$lastname: Last name

- \$user: User name
- \$commonname: Common name
- \$email: Email address

You can use them in the following input fields on user edit screen:

- Common name
- Description
- Mail
- Postal address
- Registered address
- Web site

Use this when some of your data always follows the same schema. E.g. using "\$firstname \$lastname" in common name field can be used like this to get "First Last". You can set the wildcards in profile editor so they are automatically applied for new users.

New user

Suffix People > test > de RDN identifier cn

Personal

Roles

User name

First name

Last name *

Initials

Common name *

Description

First Last

Suffix People > test > de RDN identifier cn

Personal

Roles

User name

First name

Last name *

Initials

Common name *

Description

Unix

The Unix module manages Unix user accounts including group memberships.

There are several configuration options for this module:

- UID generator: LAM will suggest UID numbers for your accounts. Please note that it may happen that there are duplicate IDs assigned if users create accounts at the same time. Use an overlay [<http://www.openldap.org/doc/>

admin24/overlays.html] like "Attribute Uniqueness" (example) if you have lots of LAM admins creating accounts.

- Fixed range: LAM searches for free numbers within the given limits. LAM always tries to use a free UID that is greater than the existing UIDs to prevent collisions with deleted accounts.
- Samba ID pool: This uses a special LDAP entry that includes attributes that store a counter for the last used UID/GID. Please note that this requires that you install the Samba schema and create an LDAP entry of object class "sambaUnixIdPool".
- Magic number: Use this if your LDAP server assigns the UID numbers automatically (e.g. DNA by 389 server). Enter the server's magic number setting.
- Password hash type: If possible use CRYPT-SHA512 or SSHA to protect your user's passwords. The option SASL will set the password to "{SASL}<user name>". If you want to use an LDAP EXOP password operation to update the password then select LDAP_EXOP.
- Login shells: List of valid login shells that can be selected when editing an account.
- Hidden options: Some input fields can be hidden to simplify the GUI if you do not need them.
- Set primary group as memberUid: By default primary group membership is not set on group objects but only on user (gidNumber). Activate this if you need to have the primary group membership in group object, too.
- Do not add object class: This is for Windows only. When the checkbox is activated then the posixAccount object class will not be added to a user.
- User name suggestion: The user name is automatically filled as specified in the configuration (default smiller for Steve Miller). Of course, the suggested value can be changed any time. Common name is also filled with first/last name by default.

Managing entries in your LDAP directory



Users

Users

UID generator: Fixed range ?

Minimum UID number*: 10000 ?

Maximum UID number*: 20000 ?

Suffix for UID/user name check: ?

User name suggestion: @givenname+%sn% ?

Hidden options ?

Gecos
 Password
 Groups of names
 Create group with same name
 Unix groups
 Sync groups
 Exclude from group sync ?

Hosts

Hosts

UID generator: Fixed range ?

Minimum UID number*: 20000 ?

Maximum UID number*: 30000 ?

Suffix for UID/user name check: ?

Hidden options ?

Gecos

Options

Password hash type: SSHA ?

Login shells: ?

Set primary group as memberUid ?

Claudia Bach

claudia.bach@ldap-account-manager.org Telephone number 0123-4567-8900 Mobile number 0123-4567-8922

Suffix:

RDN identifier:

- Personal
- Unix
- Shadow
- Quota

User name*:

Common name: ✖ + ?

UID number:

Gecos:

Primary group:

Additional groups: ?

Home directory*:

Login shell:

Password:

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

Group memberships can be changed when clicking on "Edit groups". Here you can select the Unix groups and group of names memberships.

To enable "Group of names" please either add the groups module "groupOfNames"/"groupOfUniqueNames" or add the account type "Group of names".

The screenshot shows the LDAP account manager interface for user Claudia Bach. The breadcrumb navigation is "demo > People > test > de". The RDN identifier is "uid".

Unix groups

Selected groups	Available groups
project1 project2	computers pleaders project3 users

Navigation arrows (left, right, and a help icon) are located between the two columns.

Groups of names

Selected groups	Available groups
admins > demo > gon > test > de demo > demo > gon > test > de demosub > demo > gon > test > de project1 > demo > gon > test > de project2 > demo > gon > test > de	hr > demo > gon > test > de it > demo > gon > test > de managers > demo > gon > test > de owners > demo > gon > test > de project3 > demo > gon > test > de

Navigation arrows (left, right, and a help icon) are located between the two columns.

Sync groups

Delete non-matching entries

You can also create home directories for your users if you setup lamdaemon. This allows you to create the directories on the local or remote servers.

It is also possible to check the status of the user's home directories. If needed the directories can be created or removed at any time.

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

Claudia Bach claudia.bach@ldap-account-manager.org Telephone number 0123-4567-8900 Mobile number 0123-4567-8922

Suffix: demo > People > test > de RDN identifier: uid

Personal Home directory: /home/cbach

Unix local host: localhost Delete

Shadow

Back

Wildcards

This module provides the following wildcards (others may be provided by other modules). Add a "_" after the "\$" to get the value in lower-case (e.g. "\$_user").

- \$user: User name
- \$group: Group name (not numeric number)

You can use them in the following input fields on user edit screen:

- Common name
- Gecos
- Home directory

Use this when some of your data always follows the same schema. E.g. using "/home/\$user" in home directory field can be used like this to get "/home/myuser". You can set the wildcards in profile editor so they are automatically applied for new users.

Claudia Bach claudia.bach@ldap-account-manager.org Telephone number 0123-4567-8900 Mobile number 0123-4567-8922

Suffix: demo > People > test > de RDN identifier: uid

Personal

Unix

Shadow

User name * cbach

Common name Claudia Bach

UID number 15429

Gecos Claudia Bach

Primary group admins

Additional groups Edit groups

Home directory * /home/\$user

Check home directories

Login shell /bin/bash

Password Lock password Remove password

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

Claudia Bach claudia.bach@ldap-account-manager.org Telephone number 0123-4567-8900 Mobile number 0123-4567-8922

Suffix RDN identifier

Personal

Unix

Shadow

User name *

Common name

UID number

Gecos

Primary group

Additional groups

Home directory *

Login shell

Password

Group of names and group of members (LAM Pro)

This module manages memberships in group of (unique) names and also group of members.

Please note that this module cannot be used if the Unix module is active. In this case group memberships may be managed with the Unix module.

Configuration

To activate this feature please add the user module "Group of names (groupOfNamesUser)" to your LAM server profile.

Users

Selected modules

- Personal (inetOrgPerson)(*)
- Groups of names (groupOfNamesUser)

Available modules

- Account (account)(*)
- Account locking (locking389ds)
- AD LDS (windowsLDSUser)(*)
- Asterisk (asteriskAccount)
- Asterisk voicemail (asteriskVoicemail)

The module automatically detects if groups are based on "groupOfNames", "groupOfUniqueNames" or "groupOfMembers" and sets the correct attribute.

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

The screenshot shows the LDAP account manager interface for user Claudia Bach. At the top, the user's name and contact information are displayed: claudia.bach@ldap-account-manager.org, Telephone number 0123-4567-8900, and Mobile number 0123-4567-8922. Below this, the Suffix is set to 'demo > People > test > de' and the RDN identifier is 'uid'. On the left, there are two tabs: 'Personal' and 'Groups of names'. The 'Groups of names' tab is active, showing a list of 'Selected groups' and 'Available groups'. The 'Selected groups' list includes: admins > demo > gon > test > de, demo > demo > gon > test > de, demo > gon > test > de, demosub > demo > gon > test > de, project1 > demo > gon > test > de, and project2 > demo > gon > test > de. The 'Available groups' list includes: hr > demo > gon > test > de, it > demo > gon > test > de, managers > demo > gon > test > de, owners > demo > gon > test > de, and project3 > demo > gon > test > de. Both lists have a 'Filter' field containing 'demo'. A 'Sync from other user' button is located at the bottom.

Organizational roles (LAM Pro)

LAM can manage role memberships in organizationalRole objects. To activate this feature please add the user module "Roles (organizationalRoleUser)" to your LAM server profile.

The screenshot shows the 'Users' module configuration interface. It is divided into two main sections: 'Selected modules' and 'Available modules'. The 'Selected modules' section contains two items: 'Personal (inetOrgPerson)*' and 'Roles (organizationalRoleUser)', each with a red 'X' icon. The 'Available modules' section contains five items: 'Account (account)*', 'Account locking (locking389ds)', 'AD LDS (windowsLDSUser)*', 'Asterisk (asteriskAccount)', and 'Asterisk voicemail (asteriskVoicemail)', each with a green '+' icon.

User editing

Now, there will be a new tab "Roles" when you edit your user accounts. Here you can select the role memberships.

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

The screenshot shows the user management interface for Claudia Bach. At the top, the user's name and contact information are displayed: Claudia Bach, claudia.bach@ldap-account-manager.org, Telephone number 0123-4567-8900, and Mobile number 0123-4567-8922. Below this, there are dropdown menus for Suffix (demo > People > test > de) and RDN identifier (uid). The main area is divided into three columns: Personal, Roles, and Available roles. The Roles column shows a list of roles: demo, role1, and role2. The Available roles column shows a list of roles: role1, role2, role3, test, and test2. There are navigation arrows between the columns and a help icon.

Shadow

LAM supports the management of the LDAP substitution of /etc/shadow. Here you can setup password policies for your Unix accounts and also view the last password change of a user.

The screenshot shows the user management interface for Claudia Bach, specifically the Shadow account extension configuration. The user's name and contact information are displayed at the top. Below this, there are dropdown menus for Suffix (demo > People > test > de) and RDN identifier (uid). The main area is divided into two columns: Personal, Unix, Shadow, and Samba 3. The Shadow column shows a list of password policies: Password warning, Password expiration, Minimum password age, Maximum password age, Account expiration date, and Last password change. The Account expiration date is 10.12.2020 and the Last password change is 15.04.2021. There is a button labeled "Remove Shadow account extension" at the bottom.

NIS net groups

Configuration

Please add the module "NIS net groups (nisNetGroupUser)" to the list of active user modules.

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

Users

Selected modules

Personal (inetOrgPerson)(*)	✖
Unix (posixAccount)	✖
Shadow (shadowAccount)	✖
NIS net groups (nisNetGroupUser)	✖

Available modules

Account (account)(*)	+
Account locking (locking389ds)	+
AD LDS (windowsLDSUser)(*)	+
Asterisk (asteriskAccount)	+
Asterisk voicemail (asteriskVoicemail)	+
Authorized Services (authorizedServiceObject)	+

User editing

You will now see a new tab when editing users. Here you can assign memberships in NIS net groups and also set host/domain.

Claudia Bach claudia.bach@ldap-account-manager.org Telephone number 0123-4567-8900 Mobile number 0123-4567-8922

Suffix: demo > People > test > de RDN identifier: uid

Personal	Group: group01	Host name: host1	Domain name: ✖
Unix	Filter: <input type="text"/>		
Shadow	group02		+
NIS net groups			

Password self reset (LAM Pro)

LAM Pro allows your users to reset their passwords by answering a security question. The reset link is displayed on the self service page. Additionally, you can set question + answer in the admin interface.

Please note that self service and LAM admin interface are separated functionalities. You need to specify the list of possible security questions in both self service profile(s) and server profile(s).

Schema installation

Please install the LDAP schema as described here.

Activate password self reset module

Please activate the password self reset module in your LAM Pro server profile.

Users

Selected modules

Personal (inetOrgPerson)*	✖
Unix (posixAccount)	✖
Shadow (shadowAccount)	✖
Password self reset (passwordSelfReset)	✖


Available modules

Account (account)*	+
Account locking (locking389ds)	+
AD LDS (windowsLDSUser)*	+
Asterisk (asteriskAccount)	+
Asterisk voicemail (asteriskVoicemail)	+
Authorized Services (authorizedServiceObject)	+

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

Now select the tab "Module settings" and specify the list of possible security questions. Only these questions will be selectable when you later edit accounts unless you explicitly allow to enter custom questions. LAM Pro supports to set up to three security questions per user.

If you do not want to set backup email addresses then you can hide this option.

 **Password self reset**

Security questions
What is the name of your favourite TV show?
What is the brand of your first car?

Number of questions

Allow custom security questions

Hidden options

Backup email

Edit users

After everything is setup please login to LAM Pro and edit your users. You will see a new tab called "Password self reset". Here you can activate/remove the password self reset function for each user. You can also change the security question and answer.

If you set a backup email address then confirmation emails will also be sent to this address. This is useful if the user password grants access to the user's primary mailbox. So passwords can be unlocked with an external email address.

Hint: You can add the passwordSelfReset object class to all your users with the multi edit tool.

Samba 4 note: Due to a bug [https://bugzilla.samba.org/show_bug.cgi?id=10094] in Samba 4 you need to add the extension, save, and then select a question and set the answer. If you add the extension, set question/answer and then save all together this will cause an LDAP error and no changes will be saved.

Claudia Bach claudia.bach@ldap-account-manager.org Telephone number 0123-4567-8900 Mobile number 0123-4567-8922

Suffix RDN identifier

Personal
Unix
Shadow
Password self reset

Question
Answer

Question (2)
Answer (2)

Question (3)
Answer (3)

Backup email

Hosts

You can specify a list of valid host names where the user may login. If you add the value "*" then the user may login to any host. This can be further restricted by adding explicit deny entries which are prefixed with "!" (e.g. "!hr_server").

Please note that your PAM settings need to support host restrictions. This feature is enabled by setting **pam_check_host_attr** yes in your **/etc/pam_ldap.conf**. When it is enabled then the account facility of pam_ldap will perform the checks and return an error when no proper host attribute is present. Please note that users without host attribute cannot login to such a configured server.

The screenshot shows the user profile for Claudia Bach. At the top, her name and contact information are displayed: claudia.bach@ldap-account-manager.org, Telephone number 0123-4567-8900, and Mobile number 0123-4567-8922. Below this, there are navigation tabs for Personal, Unix, and Hosts. The Hosts tab is active, showing a list of hosts: server01 and server02. Each host has a red 'X' icon and a green '+' icon. A 'Remove host extension' button is located below the list.

Samba 3

LAM supports full Samba 3 user management including logon hours and terminal server options.

The module is enabled by adding "Samba 3 (sambaSamAccount)" to your user modules.

The screenshot shows the user configuration page for 'Users'. It is divided into two columns: 'Selected modules' and 'Available modules'. In the 'Selected modules' column, four modules are listed: Personal (inetOrgPerson)*, Unix (posixAccount), Shadow (shadowAccount), and Samba 3 (sambaSamAccount). Each has a red 'X' icon. In the 'Available modules' column, five modules are listed: Account (account)*, Account locking (locking389ds), AD LDS (windowsLDSUser)*, Asterisk (asteriskAccount), Asterisk voicemail (asteriskVoicemail), and Authorized Services (authorizedServiceObject). Each has a green '+' icon.

In the configuration options you can enable password history checking. Depending on your LDAP server you might need ascending or descending order. Just switch the setting if the password history is not correctly updated.

In case you have no very old Windows clients (e.g. Windows 98) it is recommended to disable LM hashes. They are considered to be insecure.

You can also hide some input fields if you do not need them.

The screenshot shows the configuration options for Samba 3. There are two dropdown menus: 'Password history' set to 'yes - ordered ascending' and 'Disable LM hashes' set to 'yes'. Below these are 'Hidden options' with several checkboxes: Home drive, Logon script, Logon hours, Home path, Last password change, Terminal server options, Profile path, and Samba workstations. All checkboxes are currently unchecked.

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

After configuring the module you will see the Samba 3 tab when you edit a user.

The screenshot shows the user management interface for 'Claudia Bach'. The user's email is 'claudia.bach@ldap-account-manager.org', telephone number is '0123-4567-8900', and mobile number is '0123-4567-8922'. The breadcrumb navigation is 'demo > People > test > de'. The RDN identifier is 'uid'. On the left, there are tabs for 'Personal', 'Unix', 'Shadow', and 'Samba 3'. The 'Samba 3' tab is active. The configuration fields are as follows:

Display name	Claudia Bach
Use no password	<input type="checkbox"/>
Password does not expire	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Account is deactivated	<input type="checkbox"/>
Account is locked	<input type="checkbox"/>
Password change at next login	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Last password change	-
User can change password	-
User must change password	-
Account expiration date	- Change
Home drive	X:
Home path	
Profile path	
Logon script	
Samba workstations	Edit workstations
Windows group	admins
Special user	-
Domain	MyCompany
Logon hours	Edit
Terminal server options	Edit

At the bottom of the Samba 3 configuration area, there is a button labeled 'Remove Samba 3 extension'.

Logon hours can be changed.

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

Claudia Bach claudia.bach@ldap-account-manager.org Telephone number 0123-4567-8900 Mobile number 0123-4567-8922

Suffix demo > People > test > de RDN identifier uid

Time	Sunday	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday	Saturday
00:00 - 00:59	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
01:00 - 01:59	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
02:00 - 02:59	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
03:00 - 03:59	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
04:00 - 04:59	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
05:00 - 05:59	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
06:00 - 06:59	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
07:00 - 07:59	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
08:00 - 08:59	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
09:00 - 09:59	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
10:00 - 10:59	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
11:00 - 11:59	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
12:00 - 12:59	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
13:00 - 13:59	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
14:00 - 14:59	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
15:00 - 15:59	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
16:00 - 16:59	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
17:00 - 17:59	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
18:00 - 18:59	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
19:00 - 19:59	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
20:00 - 20:59	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
21:00 - 21:59	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
22:00 - 22:59	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
23:00 - 23:59	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Ok Cancel

You can also setup terminal server settings.

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

Claudia Bach claudia.bach@ldap-account-manager.org Telephone number 0123-4567-8900 Mobile number 0123-4567-8922

Suffix demo > People > test > de RDN identifier uid

Personal
Unix
Shadow
Samba 3

Allow terminal server login ?
Home directory \home\cbach
Home drive D:
Profile path
Inherit client startup configuration ?
Initial program login.bat
Working directory
Connection time limit 0
Disconnection time limit 0
Idle time limit 0
Connect client drives ?
Connect client printers ?
Client printer is default ?
Shadowing input off, notify off
On broken or timed out connection reset
Reconnect if disconnected from any client

Ok Cancel

Windows (Samba 4/Active Directory)

Please activate the account type "Users" in your LAM server profile and then add the user module "Windows (windowsUser)(*)".

Active account types

Users

User accounts (e.g. Unix, Samba and Kolab) ↓ ×

LDAP suffix * cn=users,dc=w2012,dc=test ?
List attributes #cn;#givenName;#sn;#mail ?
Custom label Users ?
Additional LDAP filter ?
Read-only ?
Hidden ?
No new entries ?
Disallow delete ?

The default list attributes are for Unix and not suitable for Windows (blank lines in account table). Please use "#cn;#givenName;#sn;#mail" or select your own attributes to display in the account list.

Users

Selected modules

Windows (windowsUser)* ×

Available modules

- Account (account)* +
- Account locking (locking389ds) +
- AD LDS (windowsLDSUser)* +
- Asterisk (asteriskAccount) +

On tab "Module settings" you can specify the possible Windows domain names and if pre-Windows 2000 user names should be managed.

NIS support is deactivated by default. Enable it if needed.

You can also set maximum values for user photos in advanced options.



Windows

Domain

Display form

Hidden options ?

- Business category
- Department
- Email address
- Employee type
- Home drive
- Last login
- Logon script
- NIS domain
- Organisation
- Other pagers
- Pager
- Postal code
- Require smartcard
- Telephone number
- Workstations

De

Last p

O

Other te

User

▼ Advanced options

Photo

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

Now you can manage your Windows users and e.g. assign groups. You might want to set the default domain name in the profile editor.

Attention:

- Password changes require a secure connection via `ldaps://`. Check your LAM server profile if password changes are refused by the server.
- Your server must run a 64bit operating system. Otherwise, the module might not work.

The screenshot shows the user profile editor for 'Hans Müller' in the LDAP account manager. The interface includes a breadcrumb trail 'Users > w2012 > test', the user's email 'hmueller@ldap-account-manager.org', and the RDN identifier 'cn'. The profile is categorized as 'Windows'. The 'General' section contains fields for 'User name *' (hmueller), 'User name (pre W2K)' (hmueller), 'First name' (Hans), 'Last name' (Müller), 'Common name *' (Hans Müller), 'Display name' (Hans Müller), 'Initials' (S.M.), and 'Description'. The 'Address' section includes 'Street' (Some street 42), 'Post office box' (12345), 'Postal code' (DE-12345), 'Location' (MyCity), 'State' (My State), and 'Office name'. On the right, there is a blue silhouette placeholder for a photo with an 'Add photo' button, and a 'Groups' section with an 'Edit groups' button and the text 'demo'.

Field	Value
User name *	hmueller
User name (pre W2K)	hmueller
First name	Hans
Last name	Müller
Common name *	Hans Müller
Display name	Hans Müller
Initials	S.M.
Description	
Street	Some street 42
Post office box	12345
Postal code	DE-12345
Location	MyCity
State	My State
Office name	

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

Contact data

Email address	<input type="text" value="hmueller@ldap-account-manager.org"/>	?
Email alias	<input type="text"/>	+ ?
Proxy-Addresses	<input type="text"/>	+ ?
Telephone number	<input type="text"/>	?
Other telephone numbers	<input type="text"/>	+ ?
Mobile	<input type="text"/>	?
Other mobiles	<input type="text"/>	+ ?
Pager	<input type="text"/>	?
Other pagers	<input type="text"/>	+ ?
Fax number	<input type="text"/>	?
Web site	<input type="text"/>	?
Other web sites	<input type="text"/>	+ ?

Work details

Job title	<input type="text"/>	?
Car license	<input type="text"/>	?
Employee number	<input type="text" value="123456"/>	?
Employee type	<input type="text" value="Temp"/>	?
Business category	<input type="text" value="HR"/>	x + ?
Company	<input type="text"/>	?
Department	<input type="text"/>	?
Department number	<input type="text"/>	+ ?
Organisational unit	<input type="text"/>	+ ?
Organisation	<input type="text"/>	+ ?
Manager	- <input type="button" value="Change"/>	?

Wildcards

This module provides the following wildcards (others may be provided by other modules). Add a "_" after the "\$" to get the value in lower-case (e.g. "\$_firstname").

- \$firstname: First name
- \$lastname: Last name
- \$user: User name
- \$commonname: Common name
- \$email: Email address

You can use them in the following input fields on user edit screen:

- Common name
- Display name
- Email
- Email alias

- Home directory
- Profile path
- Script path
- User name
- User name (pre W2K)

Use this when some of your data always follows the same schema. E.g. using "\$firstname \$lastname" in common name field can be used like this to get "First Last". You can set the wildcards in profile editor so they are automatically applied for new users.

Windows

General

User name * myuser
w2012

User name (pre W2K)

First name First

Last name Last

Common name * \$firstname \$lastname

Windows

General

User name * myuser
w2012

User name (pre W2K) myuser

First name First

Last name Last

Common name * First Last

AD LDS (formerly ADAM) (LAM Pro)

Please activate the account type "Users" in your LAM server profile and then add the user module "AD LDS (windowsLDSUser)(*)".

Active account types

Users

User accounts (e.g. Unix, Samba and Kolab) ↓ ×

LDAP suffix * cn=users,dc=w2012,dc=test

List attributes #cn,#givenName,#sn,#mail

Custom label Users

Additional LDAP filter

Read-only

Hidden

No new entries

Disallow delete

The default list attributes are for Unix and not suitable for AD LDS (blank lines in account table). Please use "#cn;#givenName;#sn;#mail" or select your own attributes to display in the account list.

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

The screenshot displays the 'Users' configuration page with the following components:

- Navigation tabs:** General settings, Account types, Modules, Module settings (active), Jobs.
- Section:** Users (indicated by a person icon).
- Selected modules:** A list containing 'AD LDS (windowsLDSUser)(*)' with a red 'X' icon for removal.
- Available modules:** A scrollable list of modules, each with an icon and a green '+' icon for addition:
 - Account (account)(*)
 - Account locking (locking389ds)
 - Asterisk (asteriskAccount)
 - Asterisk voicemail (asteriskVoicemail)
 - Authorized Services (authorizedServiceObject)
 - Auto delete (autoDelete)
 - Courier (courierMailAccount)
 - Custom fields (customFields)

On tab "Module settings" you can specify the possible Windows domain names.

You can also set maximum values for user photos in advanced options.

General settings Account types Modules Module settings

AD LDS

Hidden options ?

- Proxy-Addresses
- Other mobiles
- Last password change
- Job title
- Employee type
- Department
- Organisation

Advanced options

Photo

- Maximum width
- Maximum height
- Maximum file size

Now you can manage your AD LDS users and e.g. assign groups. You might want to set the default domain name in the profile editor.

Attention:

Password changes require a secure connection via ldaps://. Check your LAM server profile if password changes are refused by the server.

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

demo > users > instance1 > w10e

Suffix users > instance1 > w10e RDN identifier cn ?

AD LDS

General

User name * demo w2012 ?

First name Demo ?

Last name User ?

Common name * demo ?

Display name Demo User ?

Initials ?

Description ?

Address

Street Demo street 123 ?

Post office box ?

Postal code ?

Location Domo Town ?

State ?

Office name ?

Contact data

Email address demo@dap-account-manager.org ?

Work details

Job title ?

Car license ?

Employee number ?

Employee type ?

Business category + ?

Company ?

Department ?

Department number + ?

Organisational unit + ?


Organisation + ?

Manager - Change ?

Account

Last password change 2020-02-19 16:13:12 ?

Last login 2020-02-19 16:13:21 ?



Add photo

Groups

Edit groups

test11
test12
test13
testgroup

Wildcards

This module provides the following wildcards (others may be provided by other modules). Add a "_" after the "\$" to get the value in lower-case (e.g. "\$_firstname").

- \$firstname: First name

- \$lastname: Last name
- \$user: User name
- \$commonname: Common name
- \$email: Email address

You can use them in the following input fields on user edit screen:

- Common name
- Display name
- Email
- Email alias

Use this when some of your data always follows the same schema. E.g. using "\$firstname \$lastname" in common name field can be used like this to get "Demo User". You can set the wildcards in profile editor so they are automatically applied for new users.

demo > users > instance1 > w10e

Suffix users > instance1 > w10e RDN identifier cn ?

AD LDS

General

User name * demo
w2012

First name Demo ?

Last name User ?

Common name * demo ?

Display name \$firstname \$lastname ?

Add photo

demo > users > instance1 > w10e

Suffix users > instance1 > w10e RDN identifier cn ?

AD LDS

General

User name * demo
w2012

First name Demo ?

Last name User ?

Common name * demo ?

Display name Demo User ?

Add photo

Filesystem quota (lamdaemon)

You can manage file system quotas with LAM. This requires to setup lamdaemon. LAM connects to your server via SSH and manages the disk filesystem quotas. The quotas are stored directly on the filesystem. This is the default mechanism to store quotas for most systems.

Please add the module "Quota (quota)" for users to your LAM server profile to enable this feature.

If you store the quota information directly inside LDAP please see the next section.

The screenshot shows the LDAP user profile for Claudia Bach. The user's email is claudia.bach@ldap-account-manager.org. The suffix is set to demo > People > test > de. The user is associated with the localhost system. The quota settings are as follows:

Mountpoint	Used blocks	Soft block limit	Hard block limit	Grace block period
/daten/projekte/lam/quotaTest/xfsMount	0	0	0	
/daten/projekte/lam/quotaTest/userOnlyMount	0	0	0	
/daten/projekte/lam/quotaTest/userAndGroupMount	0	0	0	
/daten/projekte/lam/quotaTest/ext4Mount	0	0	0	

Filesystem quota (LDAP)

You can store your filesystem quotas directly in LDAP. See Linux DiskQuota [<http://sourceforge.net/projects/linuxquota/>] for details since it requires quota tools that support LDAP. You will need to install the quota LDAP schema to manage the object class "systemQuotas".

Please add the module "Quota (systemQuotas)" for users to your LAM server profile to enable this feature.

If you store the quota information on the filesystem please see the previous section.

The screenshot shows the LDAP user profile for Claudia Bach. The user's email is claudia.bach@ldap-account-manager.org, telephone number is 0123-4567-8900, and mobile number is 0123-4567-8922. The suffix is demo > People > test > de and the RDN identifier is uid. The user is associated with the Quota module. The filesystem quota settings are as follows:

Mountpoint	Soft block limit	Hard block limit	Soft inode limit	Hard inode limit	Status
/home	200000	250000	10000	15000	✗
/share	500000	700000	20000	25000	✗
	0	0	0	0	+

Kolab

This module supports to manage Kolab accounts with LAM. E.g. you can set the user's mail quota and define invitation policies.

Please add the Kolab user module in your LAM server profile to activate Kolab support.

The screenshot shows the LDAP user profile for Claudia Bach. The user is associated with the Users module. The configuration is as follows:

Selected modules	Available modules
Personal (inetOrgPerson)(*) ✗	Account (account)(*) +
Kolab (kolabUser) ✗	Account locking (locking389ds) +
	AD LDS (windowsLDSUser)(*) +
	Asterisk (asteriskAccount) +
	Asterisk voicemail (asteriskVoicemail) +

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

Please enter an email address at the Personal page and set a Unix password first. Both are required that Kolab accepts the accounts. The email address ("Personal" page) must match your Kolab domain, otherwise the account will not work.

The screenshot displays the user management interface for Claudia Bach. At the top, the user's name and email address (claudia.bach@ldap-account-manager.org) are shown. Below this, the breadcrumb navigation indicates the user is in the 'People > ldap-account-manager > org' section. The 'RDN identifier' is set to 'cn'. The interface is divided into several sections: 'Personal' (with a profile icon), 'Kolab' (with a cloud icon), 'Mailbox quota' (with an empty input field and a help icon), 'Invitation policy' (with 'Anyone' selected, 'Manual' as the policy, and 'Always accept' as the action), 'Email aliases' (with an empty input field and a help icon), 'Delegates' (with 'Hans Zimmer > People > ldap-account-manager > org' selected), and 'Options' (with 'Allowed recipients' and 'Allowed senders' each having an empty input field and a help icon).

If you upgrade existing non-Kolab accounts please make sure that the account has an Unix password.

Asterisk

LAM supports Asterisk accounts, too. See the Asterisk section for details.

EDU person

EDU person accounts are mainly used in university networks. You can specify the principal name, nick names and much more.

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

Claudia Bach claudia.bach@ldap-account-manager.org Telephone number 0123-4567-8900 Mobile number 0123-4567-8922

Suffix: demo > People > test > de RDN identifier: uid

Personal

Unix

Shadow

EDU person

Principal name: cbach

Primary affiliation: employee

Scoped affiliations: affiliate @ cs.berkeley.edu

Affiliations: library-walk-in, affiliate, employee, affiliate

Nick names: claudia

Entitlements: urn:mace:WASHINGTON.EDU:confocalMicroscope

Organisation: o=Hogwarts,dc=hsww,dc=wiz

Primary organisational unit: ou=Potions,o=Hogwarts,dc=hsww,dc=wiz

Organisational units: ou=Potions,o=Hogwarts,dc=hsww,dc=wiz

Assurance profiles: http://idm.example.org/LOA#sample, urn:mace:incommon:IAQ:sample

[Remove EDU person extension](#)

PyKota

There are two LAM user modules depending if your user entries should be built on object class "pykotaObject" or a different structural object class (e.g. "inetOrgPerson"). For "pykotaObject" please select "PyKota (pykotaUserStructural(*))" and "PyKota (pykotaUser)" in all other cases.

Users

Selected modules

- Personal (inetOrgPerson)*
- PyKota (pykotaUser)

Available modules

- Account (account)*
- Account locking (locking389ds)
- AD LDS (windowsLDSUser)*
- Asterisk (asteriskAccount)
- Asterisk voicemail (asteriskVoicemail)

To display the job history please setup the job DN on tab "Module settings":

PyKota

Job suffix: ou=jobs,ou=pykota,o=test,c=de

Now you can add the PyKota extension to your user accounts. Here you can setup the printing options and add payments for this user.

For LAM Pro there are also self service fields to allow users e.g. to view their current balance and job history.

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

Demo User
Suffix people > pykota > test > de RDN identifier cn

P Personal

P PyKota

Pykota user name

Balance 301 ?

?

Limit type Quota

Overcharge factor

Payment

Amount
 Comment
 ?

Remove PyKota extension

You may also view the payment and job history.

Demo User
Suffix people > pykota > test > de RDN identifier cn

P Personal

P PyKota

Total paid 301 ?

Payment history

Date	Amount	Comment
2019-09-28 11:23:30,00	11.0	
2019-09-28 10:53:31,00	200.0	
2015-08-05 19:59:39,00	30.0	
2015-08-05 19:59:35,00	10.0	
2013-10-15 18:30:54,00	50.0	initial payment

Demo User
Suffix people > pykota > test > de RDN identifier cn

P Personal

P PyKota

Date	Printer	Price	Size	Title
06.08.2015 21:17:06	Virtual_PDF_Printer	9.5	90	
05.08.2015 22:00:33	Virtual_PDF_Printer	9.5	90	
05.08.2015 21:59:44	Virtual_PDF_Printer	9.5	90	
24.09.2013 20:55:28	Virtual_PDF_Printer	9.5	90	LDAP Account Manager Pro (localhost:389)

83

Password policy (LAM Pro)

OpenLDAP supports the ppolicy [<http://linux.die.net/man/5/slapo-ppolicy>] overlay to manage password policies for LDAP entries. LAM Pro supports managing the policies and assigning them to user accounts.

Please add the account type "Password policies" to your LAM server profile and activate the "Password policy" module for the user/group/host type.

The screenshot shows the 'Users' management interface. It is divided into two columns: 'Selected modules' and 'Available modules'. The 'Selected modules' column contains four items: 'Personal (inetOrgPerson)*', 'Unix (posixAccount)', 'Shadow (shadowAccount)', and 'Password policy (ppolicyUser)'. Each item has a red 'X' icon to its right. The 'Available modules' column contains five items: 'Account (account)*', 'Account locking (locking389ds)', 'AD LDS (windowsLDSUser)*', 'Asterisk (asteriskAccount)', and 'Asterisk voicemail (asteriskVoicemail)'. Each item has a green '+' icon to its right.

You can select the password policy and force a password change on next login. Accounts can also be (un)locked.

The screenshot shows the user profile page for 'Claudia Bach'. At the top, there is a header with the user's name, email address (claudia.bach@ldap-account-manager.org), telephone number (0123-4567-8900), and mobile number (0123-4567-8922). Below the header, there is a navigation bar with 'Suffix' set to 'demo > People > test > de' and 'RDN identifier' set to 'uid'. On the left side, there is a sidebar with four options: 'Personal', 'Unix', 'Shadow', and 'Password policy'. On the right side, there is a form for 'Password policy' with a dropdown menu set to 'default'. Below this, there is a checkbox for 'Password change required' which is unchecked, and a label 'Last password change' with the value '16.12.2021 08:53:38'. At the bottom right, there is a 'Lock account' button.

You can assign any password policy which is found in the LDAP suffix of the "Password policies" type. When you set the policy to "default" then OpenLDAP will use the default policy as defined in your slapd.conf file.

Attention: Locking and unlocking requires that you also activate the option "Lockout users" in the assigned password policy. Otherwise, it will have no effect.

Account locking for 389ds (LAM Pro)

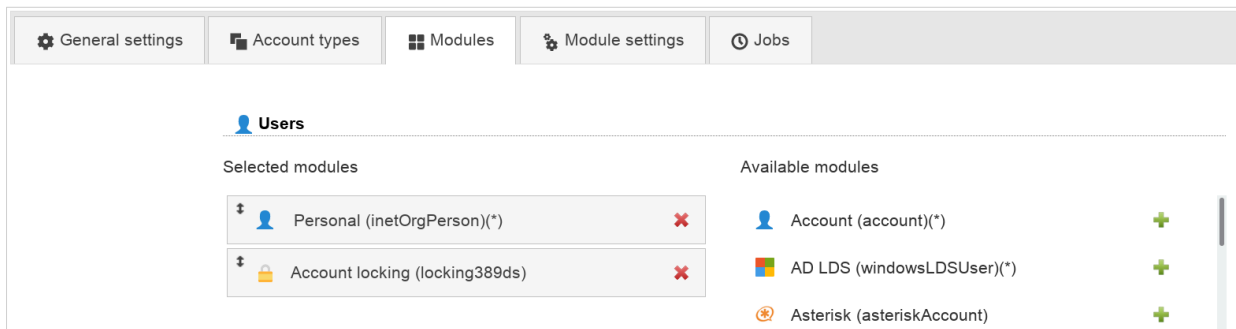
This module allows you to display if users are locked by 389ds server. You can (de)activate your users. The password expiration time can also be managed.

Requirements: 389ds LDAP server

Configuration

Please add the user module "Account locking (locking389ds)".

Managing entries in your LDAP directory



This will show the password expiration time. You can edit the value if needed.

If there are any failed login attempts then LAM displays their number and till when the user is locked by the system.

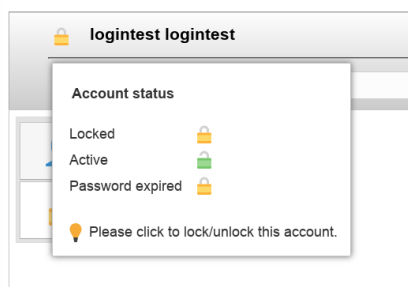
The limit of failed login attempts and lockout duration is configured on your LDAP server and not within LAM.



You can unlock the user by clicking on the lock icon.

Here you can also (de)activate the account.

Note: Accounts are only locked by the LDAP server due to failed password attempts. You cannot manually lock an account. Deactivate it in case you want to disable login for a user.

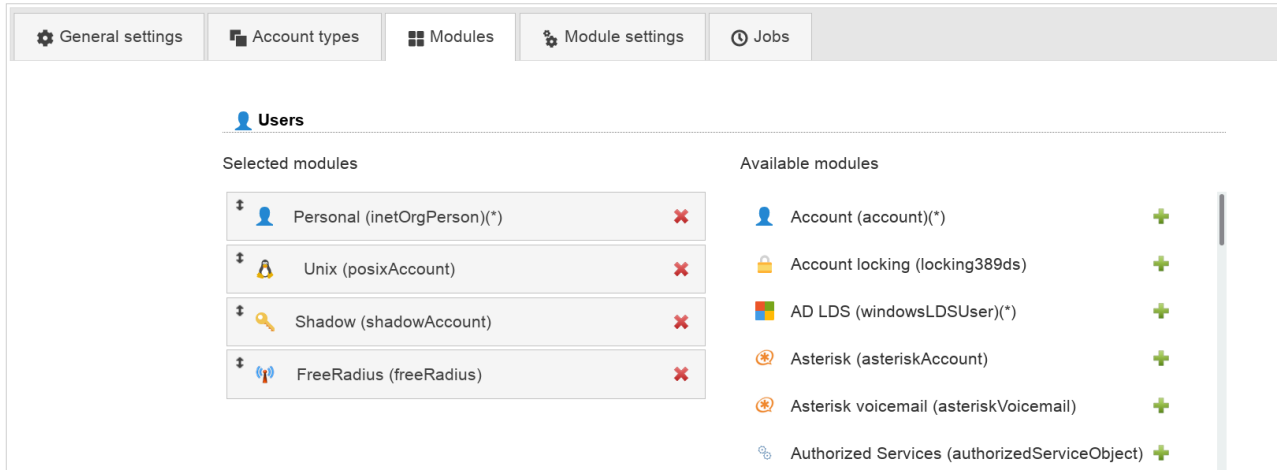


FreeRadius

FreeRadius is a software that implements the RADIUS authentication protocol. LAM allows you to manage several of the FreeRadius attributes.

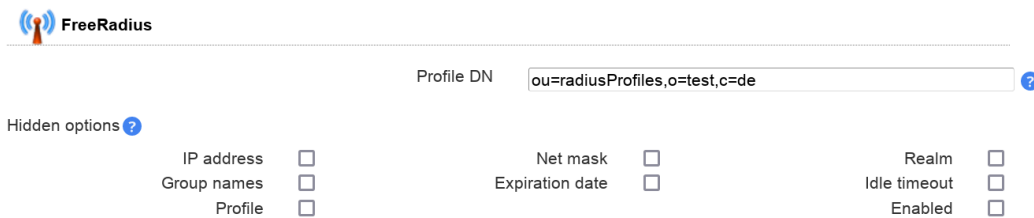
To activate the FreeRadius plugin please activate the FreeRadius user module in your server profile:

Managing entries in your LDAP directory



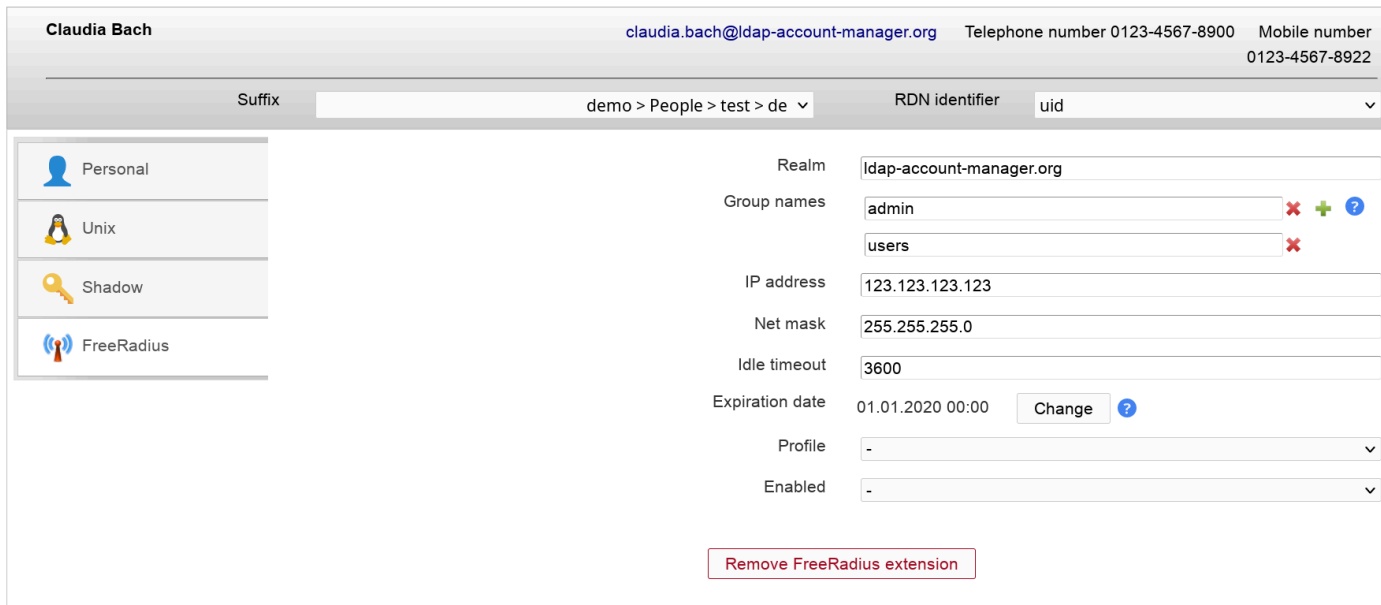
The screenshot shows the 'Users' management interface. At the top, there are navigation tabs: 'General settings', 'Account types', 'Modules', 'Module settings', and 'Jobs'. The 'Users' section is active. It is divided into two columns: 'Selected modules' and 'Available modules'. The 'Selected modules' column contains four items: 'Personal (inetOrgPerson)(*)', 'Unix (posixAccount)', 'Shadow (shadowAccount)', and 'FreeRadius (freeRadius)'. Each item has a red 'X' icon to its right. The 'Available modules' column contains six items: 'Account (account)(*)', 'Account locking (locking389ds)', 'AD LDS (windowsLDSUser)(*)', 'Asterisk (asteriskAccount)', 'Asterisk voicemail (asteriskVoicemail)', and 'Authorized Services (authorizedServiceObject)'. Each item has a green '+' icon to its right.

You can disable unneeded fields on the tab "Module settings". Here you can also set the DN where your Radius profile templates are stored if you use the option "Profile".



The screenshot shows the 'FreeRadius' configuration interface. At the top, there is a 'Profile DN' field with the value 'ou=radiusProfiles,o=test,c=de'. Below this, there is a 'Hidden options' section with several checkboxes: 'IP address', 'Group names', 'Profile', 'Net mask', 'Expiration date', 'Realm', 'Idle timeout', and 'Enabled'. All checkboxes are currently unchecked.

Now you will see the tab "FreeRadius" when editing users. The extension can be (de)activated for each user. You can setup e.g. realm, IP and expiration date.



The screenshot shows the user profile editing interface for 'Claudia Bach'. The user's email is 'claudia.bach@ldap-account-manager.org', telephone number is '0123-4567-8900', and mobile number is '0123-4567-8922'. The 'Suffix' is 'demo > People > test > de' and the 'RDN identifier' is 'uid'. The 'FreeRadius' extension is active. The configuration fields are: 'Realm' (ldap-account-manager.org), 'Group names' (admin, users), 'IP address' (123.123.123.123), 'Net mask' (255.255.255.0), 'Idle timeout' (3600), 'Expiration date' (01.01.2020 00:00), 'Profile' (-), and 'Enabled' (-). A 'Remove FreeRadius extension' button is visible at the bottom.

Heimdal Kerberos (LAM Pro)

You can manage your Heimdal Kerberos accounts with LAM Pro. Please add the user module "Kerberos (heimdalKerberos)" to activate this feature.

Setup password changing

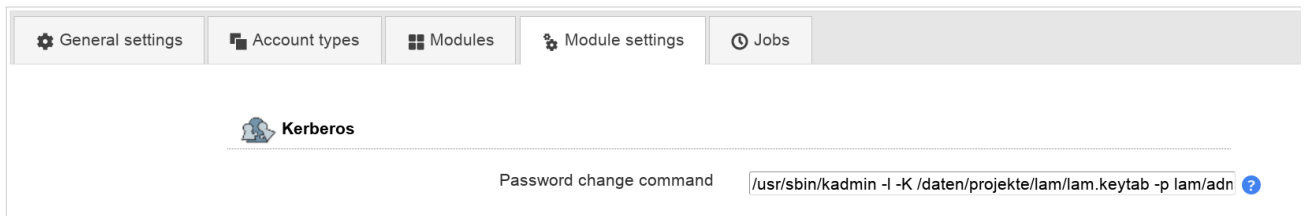
Managing entries in your LDAP directory

LAM Pro cannot generate the password hashes itself because Heimdal uses a proprietary format for them. Therefore, LAM Pro needs to call e.g. kadmin to set the password.

The wildcards @@password@@ and @@principal@@ are replaced with password and principal name. Please use keytab authentication for this command since it must run without any interaction.

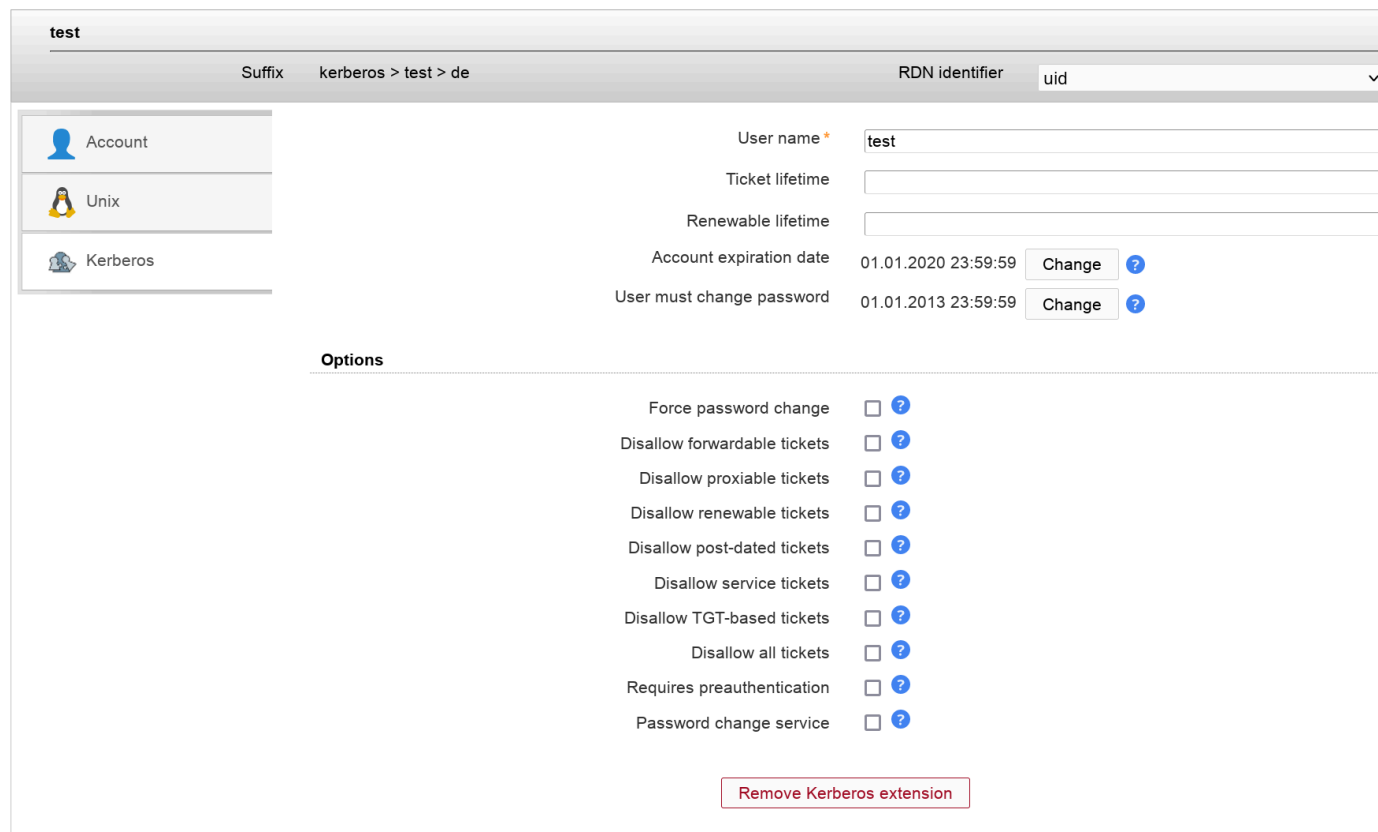
Example to create a keytab: `ktutil -k /root/lam.keytab add -p lam@LAM.LOCAL -e aes256-cts-hmac-sha1-96 -V 1`

Security hint: Please secure your LAM Pro server since the new passwords will be visible for a short term in the process list during password change.



User management

You can specify the principal/user name, ticket lifetimes and expiration dates. Additionally, you can set various account options.



MIT Kerberos (LAM Pro)

You can manage your MIT Kerberos accounts with LAM Pro. Please add the user module "Kerberos (mitKerberos)" to activate this feature. If you want to manage entries based on the structural object class "krbPrincipal" please use "Kerberos (mitKerberosStructural)" instead.

Setup password changing

LAM Pro cannot generate the password hashes itself because MIT uses a proprietary format for them. Therefore, LAM Pro needs to call `kadmin/kadmin.local` to set the password.

LAM will add `"-q 'cpw -pw PASSWORD PRINCIPAL'"` to the command to set the password. Please use keytab authentication for this command since it must run without any interaction.

Keytabs may be created with the `"ktutil"` application.

Security hint: Please secure your LAM Pro server since the new passwords will be visible for a short term in the process list during password change.

Please note that `kadmin/kadmin.local` often returns a successful command even if errors occurred (e.g. password policy violations). You need to test this before and if affected then write a wrapper script around `kadmin` that returns non-zero return codes for errors.

Example commands:

- `/usr/sbin/kadmin -k -t /home/www-data/apache.keytab -p realm/changepwd`
- `sudo /usr/sbin/kadmin.local`



Password change command `/usr/sbin/kadmin -k -t /data/apache.keytab -p realm/changepwd` ?

User management

You can specify the principal/user name, ticket lifetimes and expiration dates. Additionally, you can set various account options.

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

The screenshot shows the user management interface for a user named 'test'. The breadcrumb path is 'LAM.LOCAL > mitkerberos > test > de'. The RDN identifier is 'cn'. The interface is divided into sections: Personal, Unix, and Kerberos. The main area displays user details and options.

Field	Value
User name *	test@LAM.LOCAL
Failed logins	3
Ticket lifetime	
Renewable lifetime	
User must change password	- Change ?
Account expiration date	- Change ?
Last password change	07.09.2021 10:49:45 ?
Last login	07.09.2021 10:59:26 ?
Last failed login	07.09.2021 11:00:02 ?

Options

Force password change	<input type="checkbox"/> ?
Disallow forwardable tickets	<input type="checkbox"/> ?
Disallow proxiable tickets	<input type="checkbox"/> ?
Disallow renewable tickets	<input type="checkbox"/> ?
Disallow post-dated tickets	<input type="checkbox"/> ?
Disallow service tickets	<input type="checkbox"/> ?
Disallow user-to-user authentication	<input type="checkbox"/> ?
Disallow all tickets	<input type="checkbox"/> ?
Requires preauthentication	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ?
Requires hardware authentication	<input type="checkbox"/> ?
Password change service	<input type="checkbox"/> ?
Password policy	demo

[Remove Kerberos extension](#)

NIS mail aliases

This module allows to add/remove the user in mail alias entries.

Note: You need to activate the mail alias type for this module.

To activate mail aliases for users please select the module "Mail aliases (nisMailAliasUser)":

The screenshot shows the 'Users' module settings interface. It is divided into two columns: 'Selected modules' and 'Available modules'. The 'Selected modules' column contains four items: Personal (inetOrgPerson)*, Unix (posixAccount), Shadow (shadowAccount), and Mail aliases (nisMailAliasUser). The 'Available modules' column contains six items: Account (account)*, Account locking (locking389ds), AD LDS (windowsLDSUser)*, Asterisk (asteriskAccount), Asterisk voicemail (asteriskVoicemail), and Authorized Services (authorizedServiceObject).

Selected modules	Available modules
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Personal (inetOrgPerson)*	<input type="checkbox"/> Account (account)*
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Unix (posixAccount)	<input type="checkbox"/> Account locking (locking389ds)
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Shadow (shadowAccount)	<input type="checkbox"/> AD LDS (windowsLDSUser)*
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Mail aliases (nisMailAliasUser)	<input type="checkbox"/> Asterisk (asteriskAccount)
	<input type="checkbox"/> Asterisk voicemail (asteriskVoicemail)
	<input type="checkbox"/> Authorized Services (authorizedServiceObject)

On tab Module settings you can select if you want to set the user name or email as recipient in alias entries.

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

Mail aliases

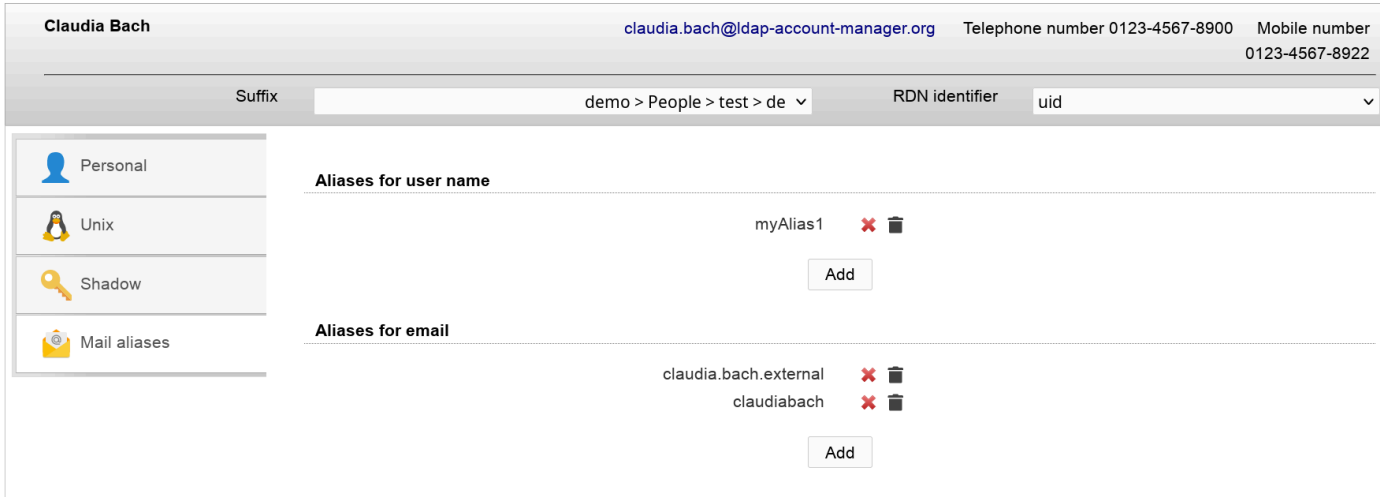
Hidden options [?](#)

Aliases for user name

Aliases for email

Now you will see the mail aliases tab when editing an user.

The red cross will only remove the user from the alias entry. If you click the trash can button then the whole alias entry (which may contain other users) will be deleted.



The screenshot shows the user management interface for Claudia Bach. At the top, the user's name "Claudia Bach" is displayed along with her email "claudia.bach@dap-account-manager.org", telephone number "0123-4567-8900", and mobile number "0123-4567-8922". Below this, there are dropdown menus for "Suffix" (set to "demo > People > test > de") and "RDN identifier" (set to "uid"). A sidebar on the left contains navigation tabs: "Personal", "Unix", "Shadow", and "Mail aliases" (which is currently selected). The main content area is divided into two sections: "Aliases for user name" and "Aliases for email". Under "Aliases for user name", there is one entry "myAlias1" with a red cross icon and a trash can icon, and an "Add" button below it. Under "Aliases for email", there are two entries: "claudia.bach.external" and "claudiabach", each with a red cross icon and a trash can icon, and an "Add" button below them.

You can add the user to existing alias entries or create completely new ones.

Claudia Bach claudia.bach@ldap-account-manager.org Telephone number 0123-4567-8900 Mobile number 0123-4567-8922

Suffix: demo > People > test > de RDN identifier: uid

Recipient: cbach

Create new alias

Suffix: ou=mailaliases,o=test,c=de

Alias name:

Add to existing alias

Alias names:

- claudia.bach.external
- claudiabach
- testalias
- testalias2

Courier mail

This module allows to add/remove the Courier extension for users.

Configuration:

Please activate the module Courier for users to enable this extension. The Unix module is optional.

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

The screenshot shows the 'Unix Users' configuration page. At the top, there are navigation tabs: 'General settings', 'Account types', 'Modules', 'Module settings', and 'Jobs'. The 'Module settings' tab is active. Below the navigation, the page is titled 'Unix Users'. It is divided into two columns: 'Selected modules' and 'Available modules'. The 'Selected modules' column contains three items: 'Personal (inetOrgPerson)(*)', 'Unix (posixAccount)', and 'Courier (courierMailAccount)'. Each item has a red 'X' icon to its right. The 'Available modules' column contains five items: 'Account (account)(*)', 'Account locking (locking389ds)', 'AD LDS (windowsLDSUser)(*)', 'Asterisk (asteriskAccount)', and 'Asterisk voicemail (asteriskVoicemail)'. Each item has a green '+' icon to its right.

Usage:

Your user tab will now show the Courier extension. This can be added/removed any time.

Here you can configure the home directory in case the Unix module is not activated. Additionally, mailbox folder, quota, server and feature flags can be configured.

The screenshot shows the configuration page for a user named 'Demo User' (demo@ldap-account-manager.org). The page has a breadcrumb trail: 'Suffix > courier > test > de'. The 'RDN identifier' is set to 'cn'. On the left, there are three tabs: 'Personal', 'Unix', and 'Courier'. The 'Courier' tab is selected. The main content area shows the following settings: 'Mailbox folder' is '/mnt/mail/demo/', 'Mailbox host' is 'mailserver', and 'Mailbox quota' is '500 GB'. Below these are four checkboxes, all of which are unchecked: 'Disable IMAP access', 'Disable POP3 access', 'Disable webmail access', and 'Disable shared folder access'. At the bottom right, there is a red button labeled 'Remove Courier mail extension'.

Qmail (LAM Pro)

LAM Pro manages all qmail attributes for users. This includes mail addresses, ID numbers and quota settings.

Please note that the main mail address is managed on tab "Personal" if this module is active. Otherwise, it will be on the qmail tab.

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

Claudia Bach claudia.bach@ldap-account-manager.org Telephone number 0123-4567-8900 Mobile number 0123-4567-8922

Suffix: demo > People > test > de RDN identifier: uid

Personal

Unix

Shadow

Qmail

Alternate address:

Forwarding address:

UID number:

GID number:

Server address:

Message store:

Account status:

Configuration type:

Delivery mode:

Autoreply text:

Delivery program:

Deletion date: -

Quota

Quota size:

Message count limit:

Message size limit:

You can hide several qmail options if you do not want to manage them with LAM. This can be done on the module settings tab of your LAM server profile.

Qmail

Hidden options

- | | | | | | |
|----------------|--------------------------|---------------------|--------------------------|--------------------|--------------------------|
| Quota size | <input type="checkbox"/> | Message count limit | <input type="checkbox"/> | Message size limit | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| UID number | <input type="checkbox"/> | GID number | <input type="checkbox"/> | Autoreply text | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Server address | <input type="checkbox"/> | Message store | <input type="checkbox"/> | Delivery program | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Deletion date | <input type="checkbox"/> | Configuration type | <input type="checkbox"/> | | |

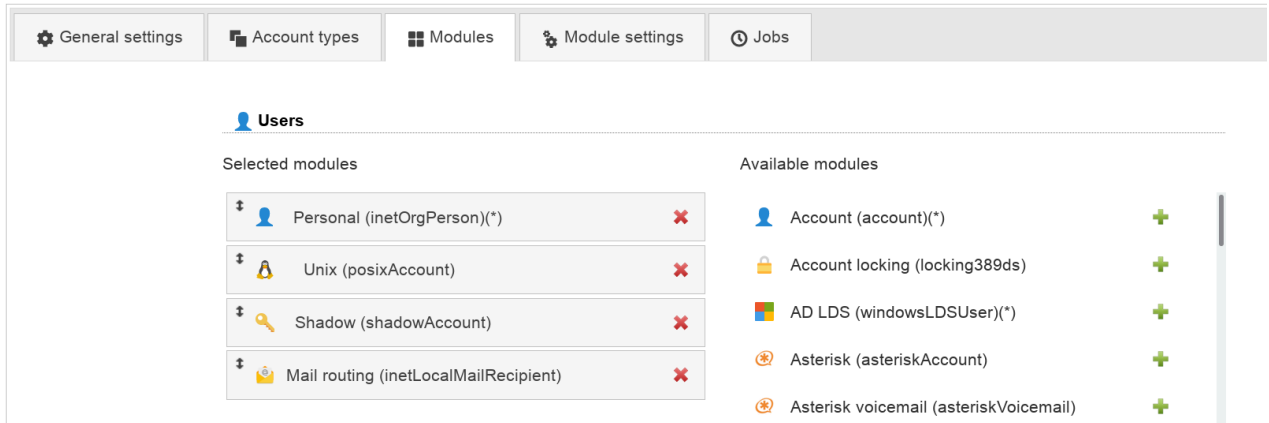
Mail routing

LAM supports to manage mail routing for user accounts.

Module activation:

This feature can be activated by adding the "Mail routing" module to the user account type in your server profile.

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

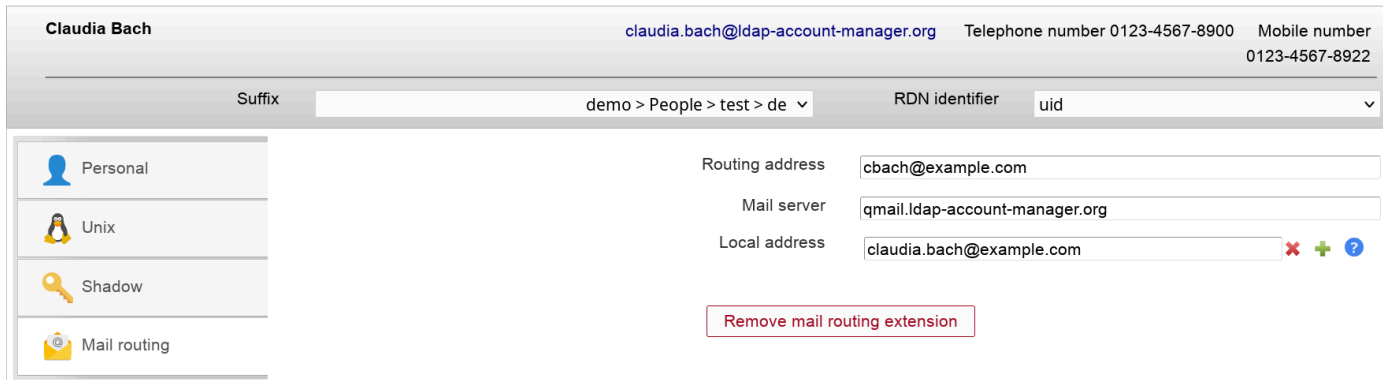


The screenshot shows the 'Users' module settings page. The navigation bar includes 'General settings', 'Account types', 'Modules', 'Module settings', and 'Jobs'. The 'Users' section is active, showing 'Selected modules' and 'Available modules'. The 'Selected modules' list includes: Personal (inetOrgPerson)(*), Unix (posixAccount), Shadow (shadowAccount), and Mail routing (inetLocalMailRecipient). The 'Available modules' list includes: Account (account)(*), Account locking (locking389ds), AD LDS (windowsLDSUser)(*), Asterisk (asteriskAccount), and Asterisk voicemail (asteriskVoicemail).

Usage

You can specify a routing address, the mail server and a number of local addresses to route.

In case you want to add this extension by default for new users there is an option in profile editor.



The screenshot shows the user profile editor for 'Claudia Bach'. The page displays the user's name, email (claudia.bach@ldap-account-manager.org), telephone number (0123-4567-8900), and mobile number (0123-4567-8922). The 'Suffix' is 'demo > People > test > de' and the 'RDN identifier' is 'uid'. The 'Mail routing' module is selected, and the 'Routing address' is 'cbach@example.com', 'Mail server' is 'qmail.ldap-account-manager.org', and 'Local address' is 'claudia.bach@example.com'. A 'Remove mail routing extension' button is visible.

Wildcards

The module supports wildcards in the following input fields:

- Routing address
- Local address

See the other modules that you activated what wildcards they provide (e.g. \$user).

SSH keys

You can manage your public keys for SSH in LAM if you installed the LPK patch for SSH [<http://code.google.com/p/openssh-lpk/>] or setup AuthorizedKeysCommand (see below).

Activate the "SSH public key" module for users in the server profile and you can add keys to your user entries.

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

The screenshot displays the LAM web interface. At the top, there are navigation tabs: General settings, Account types, Modules, Module settings, and Jobs. The 'Users' section is active, showing a list of selected modules (Personal, Unix, Shadow, SSH public key) and available modules (Account, Account locking, AD LDS, Asterisk, Asterisk voicemail). Below this, the user profile for 'Claudia Bach' is shown, including her email, telephone, and mobile numbers. The interface also shows a breadcrumb trail for the user's entry: demo > People > test > de. On the left, there are icons for the selected modules. On the right, there is a field for the SSH public key, an 'Upload file' button with a 'Browse...' dialog, and a 'Remove SSH public key extension' button.

Example for AuthorizedKeysCommand

This will dynamically get the public key from LDAP. In this case there is no need to patch SSH sources.

Create the authentication script in e.g. /usr/bin/ldapAuthSSH.sh

```
#!/bin/bash
uid=$1
server=ldap.domain.com
baseDN=ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
port=389
ldapsearch -x -h $server -p $port -b $baseDN -s sub "(&(objectclass=posixAccount)(uid=$uid))" | sed -n '/^ /{H;d};/sshPublicKey:'
```

Now setup your sshd_config

```
AuthorizedKeysCommand /usr/bin/ldapAuthSSH.sh
AuthorizedKeysCommandUser root
```

YubiKey

You can manage your YubiKey ids with LAM. It supports the yubiKeyUser schema [<https://github.com/mludvig/yubikey-ldap>] or any other attribute mapping.

Configuration

First, you need to activate the YubiKey module for users in your LAM server profile.

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

Users

Selected modules

Personal (inetOrgPerson)*	✖
Unix (posixAccount)	✖
Shadow (shadowAccount)	✖
YubiKey (yubiKeyUser)	✖

Available modules

Account (account)*	+
Account locking (locking389ds)	+
AD LDS (windowsLDSUser)*	+
Asterisk (asteriskAccount)	+
Asterisk voicemail (asteriskVoicemail)	+

Second, you need to specify which object class and attribute name should be used.

Object class: If you have an object class just for the YubiKey ids then enter it here. LAM will then provide options to add and remove it. In case you reuse some existing attribute from e.g. inetOrgPerson please leave object class name blank.

Attribute name: please enter the attribute name that is used for the key ids.

YubiKey

Object class ?

Attribute name* ?

You will then be able to manage the key ids for your users.

Claudia Bach claudia.bach@ldap-account-manager.org Telephone number 0123-4567-8900 Mobile number 0123-4567-8922

Suffix RDN identifier

YubiKey ids

123456789	✖	+	?
abcdefghijkl	✖		

[Remove YubiKey extension](#)

Self Service (LAM Pro)

This will allow your users to update their own keys.

You need to configure the object class and attribute name first. This is done on tab "Module settings" in self service profile.

Attention: Please note that both fields are mandatory here. Even if you reused an attribute from some existing object class you need to set it here. LAM needs this to detect if the user can add keys.

YubiKey

Object class ?

Attribute name ?

Then add the YubiKey ids field to your self service profile on tab "Page layout".

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

Add input field

Input field: YubiKey ids
Group: Personal data
Add ?

When a user with the specified object class logs in then the key input fields are shown.

YubiKey ids

- ccccccjctcikg ✖
- vvvgdgkkuhbl ✖
- vvfkibcvhrv ✖

+ Add ?

Authorized services

You can setup PAM to check if a user is allowed to run a specific service (e.g. sshd) by reading the LDAP attribute "authorizedService". This way you can manage all allowed services via LAM.

To activate this PAM feature please setup your `/etc/libnss-ldap.conf` and set "pam_check_service_attr" to "yes".

Inside LAM you can now set the allowed services. You may also setup default services in your account profiles.

Claudia Bach claudia.bach@ldap-account-manager.org Telephone number 0123-4567-8900 Mobile number 0123-4567-8922

Suffix: demo > People > test > de RDN identifier: uid

Personal Authorized Services

- imap ✖ + ?
- sshd ✖

Remove Authorized Service extension

Unix Shadow Authorized Services

You can define a list of services in your LAM server profile that is used for autocompletion.

Authorized Services

Predefined services

```
sshd
imap
ftp
```

The autocompletion will show all values that contains the entered text. To display the whole list you can press backspace in the empty input field. Of course, you can also insert a service name that is not in the list.

Authorized Services

p

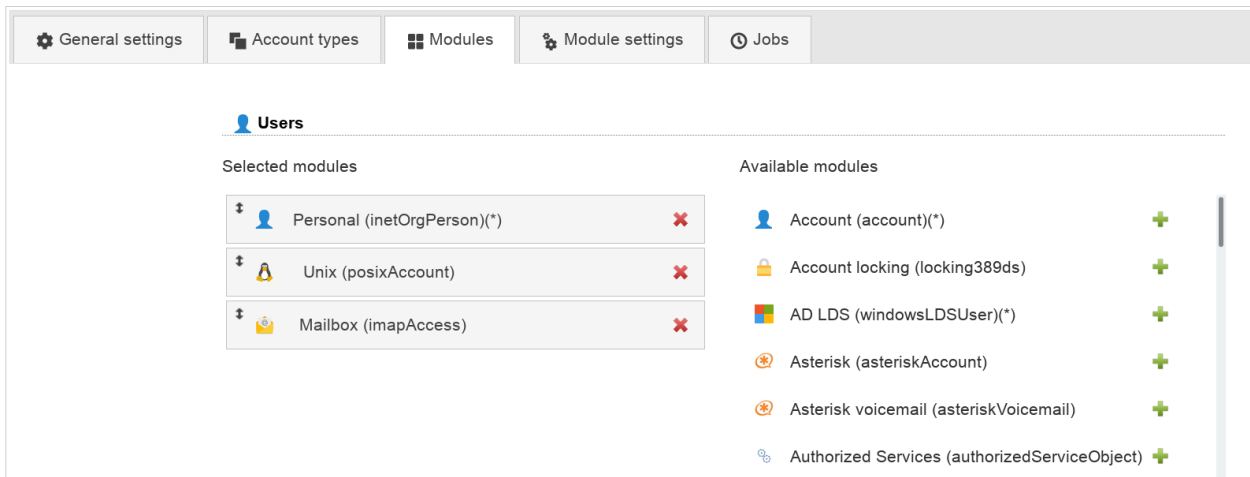
- imap ✖
- ftp ✖
- sshd ✖

IMAP mailboxes

LAM may create and delete mailboxes on an IMAP server for your user accounts. You will need an IMAP server that supports either SSL or TLS for this feature.

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

To activate the mailbox management module please add the "Mailbox (imapAccess)" module for the type user in your LAM server profile:



The screenshot shows the 'Users' management interface with the 'Modules' tab selected. On the left, under 'Selected modules', three modules are listed: 'Personal (inetOrgPerson)(*)', 'Unix (posixAccount)', and 'Mailbox (imapAccess)'. On the right, under 'Available modules', several other modules are listed with a plus sign to add them: 'Account (account)(*)', 'Account locking (locking389ds)', 'AD LDS (windowsLDSUser)(*)', 'Asterisk (asteriskAccount)', 'Asterisk voicemail (asteriskVoicemail)', and 'Authorized Services (authorizedServiceObject)'.

Now configure the module on the tab "Module settings". Here you can specify the IMAP server name, encryption options, the authentication for the IMAP connection and the valid mail domains. LAM can use either your LAM login password for the IMAP connection or display a dialog where you need to enter the password. It is also possible to store the admin password in your server profile. This is not recommended for security reasons.

The user name can either be a fixed name (e.g. "admin") or it can be generated with LDAP attributes of the LAM admin user. E.g. \$uid\$ will be transformed to "myUser" if you login with "uid=myUser,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com".

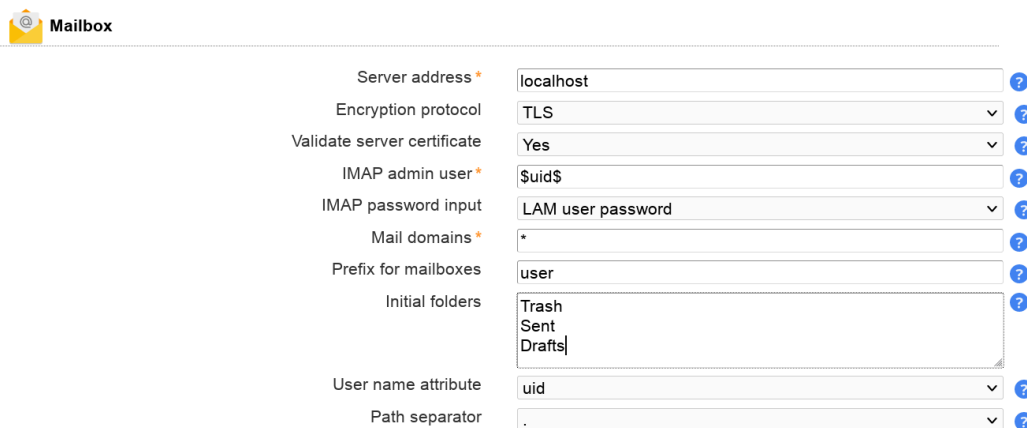
The mail domains specify for which accounts mailboxes may be created/deleted. E.g. if you enter "lam-demo.org" then mailboxes can be managed for "user@lam-demo.org" but not for "user@example.com". Use "*" for any domain.

You need to install the SSL certificate of the CA that signed your server certificate. This is usually done by installing the certificate in /etc/ssl/certs. Different Linux distributions may offer different ways to do this. For Debian/Ubuntu please copy the certificate in "/usr/local/share/ca-certificates" and run "update-ca-certificates" as root.

It is not recommended to disable the validation of IMAP server certificates.

The prefix, user name attribute and path separator specifies how your mailboxes are named (e.g. "user.myUser@localhost" or "user/myUser"). Select the values depending on your IMAP server settings.

You can specify a list of initial folder names to create for new mailboxes. LAM will then create them with each new mailbox.



The screenshot shows the 'Mailbox' configuration form with the following fields and values:

- Server address: localhost
- Encryption protocol: TLS
- Validate server certificate: Yes
- IMAP admin user: \$uid\$
- IMAP password input: LAM user password
- Mail domains: *
- Prefix for mailboxes: user
- Initial folders: Trash, Sent, Drafts
- User name attribute: uid
- Path separator: .

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

When you edit an user account then you will now see the tab "Mailbox". Here you can create/delete the mailbox for this user.

Please note that mailbox creation via file upload is not possible if you configured in LAM server profile to ask for the admin password.

The screenshot shows the user account management interface for Claudia Bach. The user's email is claudia.bach@ldap-account-manager.org, telephone number is 0123-4567-8900, and mobile number is 0123-4567-8922. The breadcrumb trail is demo > People > test > de. The RDN identifier is uid. On the left, there are three tabs: Personal, Unix, and Mailbox. The Mailbox tab is active, showing the following details:

- Email address: claudia.bach@ldap-account-manager.org
- Mailbox: user.cbach
- Current usage (kB): 0
- Quota limit (kB): 100000

There are two buttons: "Update quota" and "Delete mailbox".

IP addresses (LAM Pro)

You can manage the IP addresses of user accounts (e.g. assigned by DHCP) with the ipHost module.

Configuration

The screenshot shows the configuration interface for the Users module. The breadcrumb trail is demo > People > test > de. The RDN identifier is uid. The configuration is divided into two sections: "Selected modules" and "Available modules".

Selected modules	Available modules
Personal (inetOrgPerson)(*)	Account (account)(*)
Unix (posixAccount)	Account locking (locking389ds)
IP address (ipHost)	AD LDS (windowsLDSUser)(*)
	Asterisk (asteriskAccount)
	Asterisk voicemail (asteriskVoicemail)

User editing

The screenshot shows the user account management interface for Claudia Bach, with the IP address tab selected. The user's email is claudia.bach@ldap-account-manager.org, telephone number is 0123-4567-8900, and mobile number is 0123-4567-8922. The breadcrumb trail is demo > People > test > de. The RDN identifier is uid. On the left, there are three tabs: Personal, Unix, and IP address. The IP address tab is active, showing the following details:

- IP address: 192.168.0.22

There is a button: "Remove IP address extension".

Account

This is a very simple module to manage accounts based on the object class "account". Usually, this is used for host accounts only. Please pay attention that users based on the "account" object class cannot have contact information (e.g. telephone number) as with "inetOrgPerson".

You can enter a user/host name and a description for your accounts.

The screenshot shows the 'demoUser' management page. At the top, there's a breadcrumb 'demo > People > test > de' and an 'RDN identifier' dropdown set to 'uid'. On the left, a sidebar shows 'Account' selected. The main form has two fields: 'User name' with the value 'demoUser' and 'Description' with the value 'This is a demo user'.

OpenLDAP TOTP (LAM Pro)

Use this module if you want to use OpenLDAP's builtin 2-factor-authentication with TOTP.

For admin interface add the OpenLDAP TOTP module:

The screenshot shows the 'Module settings' for 'Users'. It features two columns: 'Selected modules' and 'Available modules'. The 'Selected modules' list includes 'Personal (inetOrgPerson)(*)', 'Unix (posixAccount)', 'Shadow (shadowAccount)', and 'OpenLDAP TOTP (openldapTotp)'. The 'Available modules' list includes 'Account (account)(*)', 'Account locking (locking389ds)', 'AD LDS (windowsLDSUser)(*)', 'Asterisk (asteriskAccount)', 'Asterisk voicemail (asteriskVoicemail)', and 'Authorized Services (authorizedServiceObject)'. Each module has a plus or minus icon for selection.

When one of your users activates TOTP then you can see the serial number and TOTP params in user edit screen.

Please note that the token can only be setup by the user in self service. Admins are not able to setup tokens. They can just delete them by removing the extension.

The screenshot shows the user edit screen for 'test'. The breadcrumb is 'People > test > de' and the 'RDN identifier' is 'cn'. On the left, a sidebar shows 'Personal', 'Unix', 'Shadow', and 'OpenLDAP TOTP' selected. The main form has two fields: 'Serial number' with the value '123456' and 'OTP parameters' with the value 'ou=People,o=test,c=de'. A 'Remove extension' button is located below the OTP parameters field.

Last login (LAM Pro)

This module shows the last successful login of the user. You can setup a cron job to deactivate inactive users.

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

Groups

Unix

This module is used to manage Unix group entries. This is the default module to manage Unix groups and uses the nis.schema. Suse users who use the rfc2307bis.schema need to use LAM Pro.

Configuration

Special Please add the account type "Groups" and then select account module "Unix (posixGroup)".

Virtual list attributes:

The following virtual attributes can be shown in the group list. These are no real LDAP attributes but extra data that can be shown by LAM.

- memberuid_count: number of entries in attribute "memberuid"

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

- member_count: number of entries in attribute "member"
- uniqueMember_count: number of entries in attribute "uniquemember"
- owner_count: number of entries in attribute "owner"
- roleOccupant_count: number of entries in attribute "roleOccupant"

Module settings:

GID generator: LAM will suggest GID numbers for your accounts. Please note that it may happen that there are duplicate IDs assigned if users create groups at the same time. Use an overlay [<http://www.openldap.org/doc/admin24/overlays.html>] like "Attribute Uniqueness" (example) if you have lots of LAM admins creating groups.

- Fixed range: LAM searches for free numbers within the given limits. LAM always tries to use a free GID that is greater than the existing GIDs to prevent collisions with deleted groups.
- Samba ID pool: This uses a special LDAP entry that includes attributes that store a counter for the last used UID/GID. Please note that this requires that you install the Samba schema and create an LDAP entry of object class "sambaUnixIdPool".
- Magic number: Use this if your LDAP server assigns the GID numbers automatically (e.g. DNA by 389 server). Enter the server's magic number setting.

Disable membership management: Disables group membership management. This is useful if memberships are e.g. managed via group of names.



Groups

GID generator	Fixed range	?
Minimum GID number *	10000	?
Maximum GID number *	20000	?
Suffix for GID/group name check		?
Disable membership management	<input type="checkbox"/>	?

Group management:

admins Administrators

Suffix demo > group > test > de RDN identifier cn ?

Unix

Group name *	admins
GID number	11819
Description	Administrators
Group members	<input type="button" value="Edit members"/> ?

azpc01
azpc02
external
shuber (shuber)
smilleru1

Group membership management:

The screenshot shows the LDAP administration interface for the 'admins' group. The breadcrumb path is 'demo > group > test > de'. The RDN identifier is 'cn'. The group is identified as 'Unix'. The 'Group members' section shows a list of 'Selected users': azpc01, azpc02, external, shuber (shuber), and smilleru1. Below this is a 'Filter' input field and a 'Back' button. The 'Available users' section shows a list of users: ebaecker (Ernst Bäcker), fhuber (Franz Huber), hmeier (Helmut Meier), hschuster (hschuster), kmontag (Kerstin Montag), mfischer (mfischer), smiller (Steve Miller), thauser (Thomas Hauser), and xmontag (Xaver Montag). Below this is another 'Filter' input field. Navigation arrows are present between the two lists.

Unix groups with rfc2307bis schema (LAM Pro)

Some applications (e.g. Suse Linux) use the rfc2307bis schema for Unix accounts instead of the nis schema. In this case group accounts are based on the object class groupOf(Unique)Names or namedObject. The object class posixGroup is auxiliary in this case.

LAM Pro supports these groups with a special account module: **rfc2307bisPosixGroup**

Use this module only if your system depends on the rfc2307bis schema. The module can be selected in the LAM configuration. Instead of using groupOfNames as basis for your groups you may also use namedObject.

Module activation:

The screenshot shows the 'Groups' configuration page. It is divided into 'Selected modules' and 'Available modules'. Under 'Selected modules', there are two entries: 'Group of names (groupOfNames)*' and 'Unix (rfc2307bisPosixGroup)'. Under 'Available modules', there are four entries: 'AD LDS (windowsLDSGroup)*', 'Auto delete (autoDelete)', 'Custom fields (customFields)', and 'Custom scripts (customScripts)'. Each entry has a plus sign icon to its right, indicating it can be added to the selected modules.

GID generator: LAM will suggest GID numbers for your accounts. Please note that it may happen that there are duplicate IDs assigned if users create groups at the same time. Use an overlay [<http://www.openldap.org/doc/admin24/overlays.html>] like "Attribute Uniqueness" (example) if you have lots of LAM admins creating groups.


- Fixed range: LAM searches for free numbers within the given limits. LAM always tries to use a free GID that is greater than the existing GIDs to prevent collisions with deleted groups.
- Samba ID pool: This uses a special LDAP entry that includes attributes that store a counter for the last used UID/GID. Please note that this requires that you install the Samba schema and create an LDAP entry of object class "sambaUnixIdPool".

Managing entries in your LDAP directory






- **Magic number:** Use this if your LDAP server assigns the GID numbers automatically (e.g. DNA by 389 server). Enter the server's magic number setting.

Disable membership management: Disables group membership management. This is useful if memberships are e.g. managed via group of names.


Force sync with group of names: This will automatically set the group memberships of the Unix part to the same members as set on group of names tab.

 **Unix**

Groups


GID generator	Fixed range	
Minimum GID number*	10000	
Maximum GID number*	20000	
Suffix for GID/group name check		
Disable membership management	<input type="checkbox"/>	




Options

Force sync with group of names 

The GID number will be filled automatically based on the server profile configuration.

demo

Suffix group > test > de RDN identifier cn 

 Unix	GID number	10001
 Group of names	Group members	<input type="button" value="Edit members"/> 
		demo_user (Demo User)

Group members can be edited and also synced with Group of (unique) names.

The screenshot shows a web interface for managing LDAP entries. At the top, there's a breadcrumb trail: "demo" > "Suffix" > "group > test > de". On the right, "RDN identifier" is set to "cn" with a help icon. A sidebar on the left shows "Unix" and "Group of names" options. The main area is titled "Group members". It features two columns: "Selected users" and "Available users". The "Selected users" column contains one entry: "demo_user (Demo User)". The "Available users" column is currently empty. Below the "Available users" column is a "Filter" input field containing the text "test". At the bottom of the main area, there is a "Sync from Group of names" button and a checkbox labeled "Delete non-matching entries" which is checked. A "Back" button is located at the bottom left of the main area.

Samba 3

LAM supports managing Samba 3 groups. You can set special group types and also create Windows predefined groups like "Domain admins".

Module activation:

The screenshot shows the "Groups" module activation interface. It is divided into two sections: "Selected modules" and "Available modules".

Selected modules	Available modules
Unix (posixGroup)*	AD LDS (windowsLDSGroup)*
Samba 3 (sambaGroupMapping)	Auto delete (autoDelete)
	Custom fields (customFields)
	Custom scripts (customScripts)
	Custom type (customBaseType)*

Group editing:

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

admins Administrators

Suffix demo > group > test > de RDN identifier cn ?

Unix

Samba 3

Display name Administrators

Windows group admins

Group type Domain group

Domain MyCompany

Local members + ?

Remove Samba 3 extension

Windows (Samba 4)

LAM can manage your Windows groups. Please enable the account type "Groups" in your LAM server profile and then add the group module "Windows (windowsGroup)(*)".

Groups

Group accounts (e.g. Unix and Samba) ↑ ↓ ×

LDAP suffix * cn=users,dc=w2012,dc=test ?

List attributes #cn;#description;#location ?

Custom label Groups ?

Additional LDAP filter ?

Read-only ?

Hidden ?

No new entries ?

Disallow delete ?

The default list attributes are for Unix and not suitable for Windows (blank lines in account table). Please use "#cn;#member;#description" or select your own attributes to display in the account list.

Groups

Selected modules

Windows (windowsGroup)* ×

Available modules

AD LDS (windowsLDSGroup)* +

Auto delete (autoDelete) +

Custom fields (customFields) +

Custom scripts (customScripts) +

Custom type (customBaseType)* +

NIS support is deactivated by default. Enable it if needed on tab "Module settings".

Windows

Hidden options ?

Email address

NIS domain

Managed by

NIS name

Now you can edit your groups inside LAM. You can manage the group name, description and its type. Of course, you can also set the group members.

Group scopes:

- Global: Use this for groups with frequent changes. Global groups are not replicated to other domains.

- Universal: Groups with universal scope are used to consolidate groups that span domains. They are globally replicated.
- Domain local: Groups with domain local scope can be used to set permissions inside one domain. They are not replicated to other domains.

Group type:

- Security: Use this group type to control permissions.
- Distribution: These groups are only used for email applications. They cannot be used to control permissions.

With "Show effective members" you can show a list of all members of this group including members of subgroups and their subgroups.

The screenshot shows the configuration page for a group named 'demo'. The breadcrumb trail is 'Users > w2012 > test'. The RDN identifier is 'cn'. The group name is 'demo', description is 'Demo Group', and group type is 'Security'. The group scope is 'Global'. The notes field contains 'This is a demo group'. The 'Managed by' field is empty with a 'Change' button. The NIS name is 'demo'. The 'Group members' section has an 'Edit' button and a 'Show effective members' button. The 'Member of' section has an 'Edit' button. The breadcrumb trail at the bottom right is 'Hans Müller > Users > w2012 > test'.

AD LDS (formerly ADAM) (LAM Pro)

LAM can manage your AD LDS groups. Please enable the account type "Groups" in your LAM server profile and then add the group module "AD LDS (windowsLDSGroup)(*)".

The screenshot shows the configuration page for AD LDS groups. The breadcrumb trail is 'Groups'. The 'Group accounts (e.g. Unix and Samba)' section has a title bar with up, down, and close icons. The configuration fields are: LDAP suffix: 'cn=users,dc=w2012,dc=test'; List attributes: '#cn;#description;#location'; Custom label: 'Groups'; Additional LDAP filter: (empty). There are checkboxes for 'Read-only', 'Hidden', 'No new entries', and 'Disallow delete', all of which are currently unchecked.

The default list attributes are for Unix and not suitable for AD LDS (blank lines in account table). Please use "#cn;#member;#description" or select your own attributes to display in the account list.

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

Groups

Selected modules

AD LDS (windowsLDSGroup)(*)

Available modules

- Auto delete (autoDelete)
- Custom fields (customFields)
- Custom scripts (customScripts)
- Custom type (customBaseType)(*)
- Dynamic List (dynamicList)(*)
- General information (generalInformation)

Now you can edit your groups inside LAM. You can manage the group name, description and its type. Of course, you can also set the group members.

With "Show effective members" you can show a list of all members of this group including members of subgroups and their subgroups.

The screenshot shows the LAM Groups management interface for a group named 'demogroup'. The breadcrumb path is 'demogroup > users > instance1 > w10e'. The suffix is 'users > instance1 > w10e' and the RDN identifier is 'cn'. The group is of type 'AD LDS'. The interface includes fields for 'Group name' (demogroup), 'Description', and 'Managed by'. There are buttons for 'Change', 'Edit', and 'Show effective members'. The 'Show effective members' button is active, showing a list of members: 'testgroup > users > instance1 > w10e'. There is also a 'Member of' field with an 'Edit' button.

Kolab

Please activate the Kolab group module in your LAM server profile to activate Kolab support.

Groups

Selected modules

Group of unique names (groupOfUniqueNames)(*)

Kolab (kolabGroup)

Available modules

- AD LDS (windowsLDSGroup)(*)
- Auto delete (autoDelete)
- Custom fields (customFields)
- Custom scripts (customScripts)
- Custom type (customBaseType)(*)

You can specify the email address and also set allowed sender and recipient addresses.

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

QA Managers People who can manage QA entries

Suffix: Groups > ldap-account-manager > org RDN identifier: cn ?

	Email address *	<input type="text" value="qa@ldap-account-manager.org"/>	?
	Allowed recipients	<input type="text"/>	+ ?
	Allowed senders	<input type="text"/>	+ ?

Mail routing

LAM supports to manage mail routing for group accounts.

Module activation:

This feature can be activated by adding the "Mail routing" module to the group account type in your server profile.

Groups

Selected modules	Available modules
Unix (posixGroup)(*) ✖	AD LDS (windowsLDSGroup)(*) +
Mail routing (inetLocalMailRecipient) ✖	Auto delete (autoDelete) +
	Custom fields (customFields) +
	Custom scripts (customScripts) +

Usage:

You can specify a routing address, the mail server and a number of local addresses to route.

In case you want to add this extension by default for new groups there is an option in profile editor.

project1 Project 1

Suffix: demo > group > test > de RDN identifier: cn ?

Unix	Routing address	<input type="text" value="mail@example.com"/>	?
Mail routing	Mail server	<input type="text" value="mail.example.com"/>	?
	Local address	<input type="text" value="mail1@example.com"/>	✖ + ?

[Remove mail routing extension](#)

Quota

You can manage file system quotas with LAM. This requires to setup lamdaemon. File system quotas are not stored inside LAM but managed directly on the specified servers.

admins

Suffix demo > group > test > de

Unix

Quota

localhost

Mountpoint	Used blocks	Soft block limit	Hard block limit	Grace block period
/daten/projekte/lam/quotaTest/xfsMount	0	0	0	
/daten/projekte/lam/quotaTest/userAndGroupMount	0	0	0	
/daten/projekte/lam/quotaTest/groupOnlyMount	0	20000	25000	
/daten/projekte/lam/quotaTest/ext4Mount	0	0	0	

Dynamic lists (LAM Pro)

Dynamic lists [<http://www.openldap.org/doc/admin24/overlays.html#Dynamic%20Lists>] allow you to create LDAP entries that populate the value of an attribute via LDAP query. This is e.g. used to create groups that contain all users in a certain DN.

Please note that this functionality requires configuration on your LDAP server. E.g. on OpenLDAP you need to activate the "dynlist" overlay and need to specify attribute mappings.

Configuration

Add a new group account type and set a unique label for it.

General settings Account types Modules Module settings Jobs

Available account types

Aliases	Alias entries	+
Asterisk extensions	Asterisk extensions entries	+
Automount entries	Automount entries	+
Billing codes	PyKota billing codes	+
Bind DNS	Bind DNS entries	+
Custom type	Custom entries	+
DHCP	DHCP administration	+
Groups	Group accounts (e.g. Unix and Samba)	+

Do not forget to set proper "List attributes" to be shown on the overview page of all dynamic lists.

Dynamic Lists

Group accounts (e.g. Unix and Samba) ↑ ↓ ×

LDAP suffix *

List attributes

Custom label

Additional LDAP filter

Read-only

Hidden

No new entries

Disallow delete

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

On tab "Modules" please add the dynamic lists module.

The screenshot shows the "Dynamic Lists" configuration page. It is divided into two main sections: "Selected modules" and "Available modules".

- Selected modules:** A search bar contains "Dynamic List (dynamicList)(*)" with a red 'X' icon to its right.
- Available modules:** A list of modules with green plus icons to their right:
 - AD LDS (windowsLDSGroup)(*)
 - Auto delete (autoDelete)
 - Custom fields (customFields)
 - Custom scripts (customScripts)
 - Custom type (customBaseType)(*)

On tab "Module settings" you can now configure your dynamic lists. Here you setup the used object class, RDN attribute, query attribute and list attribute (the one that is populated via query).

In case you have different types of dynamic lists you can simply redo the steps above to create more group types.

The screenshot shows the configuration settings for a "Dynamic List". It includes four input fields, each with a question mark icon to its right:

- Object class*: groupOfURLs
- RDN identifier*: cn
- Query attribute*: memberURL
- List attribute*: member

Usage

When you login to LAM you will see your new dynamic lists tab.

Dynamic Lists

The screenshot shows the management interface for dynamic lists. At the top, there are three buttons: "New group" (blue), "File upload" (yellow), and "Delete selected groups" (red). Below the buttons, it says "Group count: 1".

Actions	Group name	Entries
Sort sequence		
<input type="checkbox"/> Filter	demo	
<input type="checkbox"/>	demo	ldap:///ou=demo,ou=People,o=test,c=de??one?(objectClass=inetOrgPerson)

For each list you can manage the name and query string. LAM also displays which entries are auto-populated to the list.

The screenshot shows a web interface for managing LDAP entries. At the top, it says "demo > dynamiclists". Below this, there are two tabs: "Suffix" and "dynamiclists". The "dynamiclists" tab is active. On the left, there is a search box with a magnifying glass icon and the text "Dynamic List". On the right, there are several fields: "Name" with the value "demo", "Query" with the value "ldap:///ou=demo,ou=People,o=test,c=de??one?(objectClass=inetOrg)", and "Entries" with a list of names: "cbach > demo > People", "Ernst Bäcker > demo > People", "fhuber > demo > People", "hmeier > demo > People", "hschuster > demo > People", "kmontag > demo > People", "mfischer > demo > People", "rmontag > demo > People", "shuber > demo > People", "smiller > demo > People", "thausser > demo > People", and "xmontag > demo > People".

PyKota

There are two LAM group modules depending if your group entries should be built on object class "pykotaObject" or a different structural object class (e.g. "posixGroup"). For "pykotaObject" please select "PyKota (pykotaObjectStructural(*))" and "PyKota (pykotaGroup)" in all other cases.

The screenshot shows a configuration page for "Groups". At the top left, there is a "Groups" icon and label. Below this, there are two columns: "Selected modules" and "Available modules". The "Selected modules" column contains two items: "Unix (posixGroup)*" and "PyKota (pykotaGroup)", each with a red 'X' icon. The "Available modules" column contains five items: "AD LDS (windowsLDSGroup)*", "Auto delete (autoDelete)", "Custom fields (customFields)", "Custom scripts (customScripts)", and "Custom type (customBaseType)*", each with a green '+' icon.

Now you can add the PyKota extension to your groups.

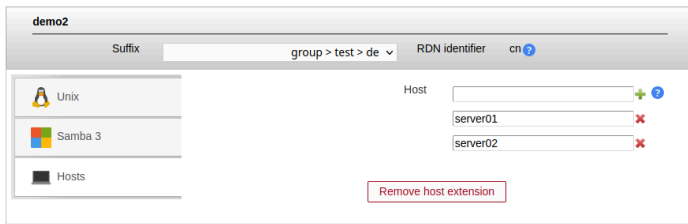
The screenshot shows a web interface for managing LDAP entries. At the top, it says "demo". Below this, there are two tabs: "Suffix" and "groups2 > pykota > test > de". The "groups2 > pykota > test > de" tab is active. On the left, there is a search box with a magnifying glass icon and the text "Dynamic List". On the right, there are several fields: "Pykota group name" with the value "demo", "Limit type" with the value "Quota", and a "Remove PyKota extension" button.

Hosts

You can specify a list of valid host names where the group's members may login. If you add the value "*" then the users may login to any host. This can be further restricted by adding explicit deny entries which are prefixed with "!" (e.g. "!hr_server").

Please note that your PAM settings need to support host restrictions. This feature is enabled by setting `pam_check_host_attr yes` in your `/etc/pam_ldap.conf`. When it is enabled then the account facility of `pam_ldap`

will perform the checks and return an error when no proper host attribute is present. Please note that users without host attribute cannot login to such a configured server.



The screenshot shows a web interface for managing LDAP entries. At the top, it says "demo2". Below that, there are fields for "Suffix" (set to "group > test > de"), "RDN identifier" (set to "cn"), and a "Host" field. The "Host" field contains two entries: "server01" and "server02", each with a red 'x' icon indicating an error. A "Remove host extension" button is visible at the bottom.

Password policy (LAM Pro)

See password policy for users.

Hosts

Account

Please see the description here.

Device (LAM Pro)

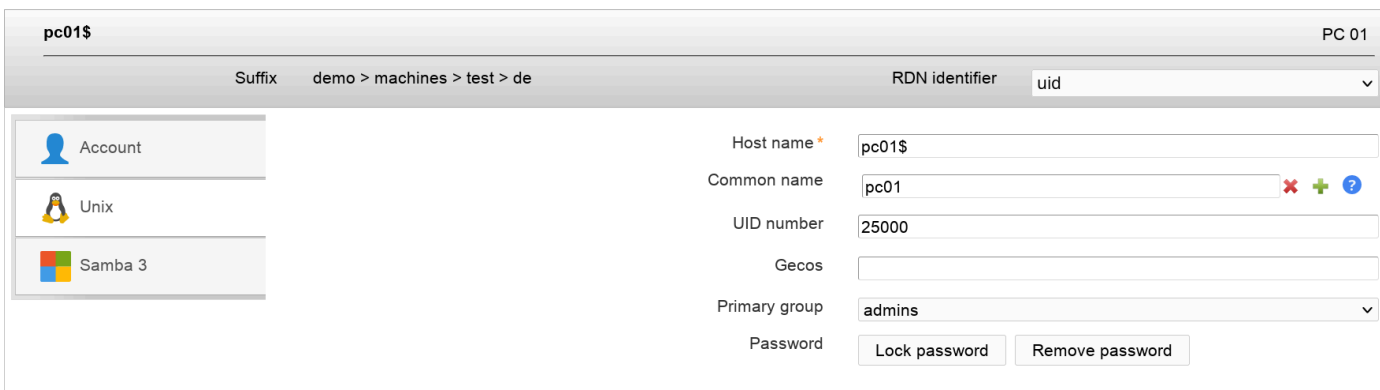
The device object class allows to manage general information about all sorts of devices (e.g. computers, network hardware, ...). You can enter the serial number, location and a describing text. It is also possible to specify the owner of the device.



The screenshot shows a web interface for managing LDAP entries. At the top, it says "server1" and "1234567890". Below that, there are fields for "Suffix" (set to "kopano > test > de") and "RDN identifier" (set to "cn"). The left sidebar shows "Device", "IP address", and "Kopano". The main area shows fields for "Name" (server1), "Description" (Server 1), "Serial number" (1234567890), "Location" (Munich), and "Owners" (Change).

Samba 3

You can manage Samba 3 host entries by adding the Unix and Samba 3 account modules.



The screenshot shows a web interface for managing LDAP entries. At the top, it says "pc01\$" and "PC 01". Below that, there are fields for "Suffix" (set to "demo > machines > test > de") and "RDN identifier" (set to "uid"). The left sidebar shows "Account", "Unix", and "Samba 3". The main area shows fields for "Host name" (pc01\$), "Common name" (pc01), "UID number" (25000), "Gecos", "Primary group" (admins), and "Password" (Lock password, Remove password).

The screenshot shows the LAM interface for editing the 'PC 01' account. The breadcrumb path is 'demo > machines > test > de'. The RDN identifier is set to 'uid'. On the left, there are three tabs: 'Account' (selected), 'Unix', and 'Samba 3'. The main configuration area includes:

- Display name: PC 01
- Domain: MyCompany
- Reset password: Reset button with a help icon.
- A red button labeled 'Remove Samba 3 extension' is visible below the main fields.

Windows (Samba 4)

LAM can manage your Windows servers and workstations. Please enable the account type "Hosts" in your LAM server profile and then add the host module "Windows (windowsHost)(*)".

The screenshot shows the 'Hosts' configuration page. The 'Host accounts (e.g. Samba)' section is expanded, showing:

- LDAP suffix: cn=users,dc=w2012,dc=test
- List attributes: #cn;#description;#location
- Custom label: (empty)
- Additional LDAP filter: (empty)
- Read-only:
- Hidden:
- No new entries:
- Disallow delete:

The default list attributes are for Unix and not suitable for Windows (blank lines in account table). Please use "#cn;#description;#location" or select your own attributes to display in the account list.

The screenshot shows the module selection interface. Under 'Selected modules', 'Windows (windowsHost)*' is listed. Under 'Available modules', the following are listed with green plus signs:

- Account (account)*
- Auto delete (autoDelete)
- Custom fields (customFields)
- Custom scripts (customScripts)

Now you will see you computer accounts inside LAM. You can set e.g. the server's description and location information.

The screenshot shows the LAM interface for editing the 'demoserver' account. The breadcrumb path is 'Users > w2012 > test'. The RDN identifier is set to 'cn'. On the left, there is a 'Windows' tab. The main configuration area includes:

- Host name: demoserver
- Description: Demo server
- Location: Munich
- Last password change: ?
- Logon count: 0
- Managed by: Hans Müller > Users > w2012 > test
- Buttons: Change and Remove

IP addresses (LAM Pro)

You can manage the IP addresses of host accounts with the ipHost module. It manages the following information:

- IP addresses (IPv4/IPv6)
- location of the host
- manager: the person who is responsible for the host

You can activate this extension by adding the module ipHost to the list of active host modules.

The screenshot shows the LAM Pro interface for managing IP addresses. The page title is "demoserver". The breadcrumb is "Suffix ips". The RDN identifier is "cn". The left sidebar shows "Device" and "IP address" modules. The main form has fields for "IP address" (10.20.30.40), "Location" (Data center 3), and "Manager" (cbach > demo > People). A "Remove IP address extension" button is at the bottom.

MAC addresses

Hosts can have an unlimited number of MAC addresses. To enable this feature just add the "MAC address" module to the host account type.

The screenshot shows the LAM Pro interface for managing MAC addresses. The page title is "pc01\$". The breadcrumb is "demo > machines". The RDN identifier is "uid". The left sidebar shows "Account", "IP address", and "MAC address" modules. The main form has a "MAC address" field with the value "00:01:02:DE:EF:18".

Puppet

LAM supports to manage your Puppet [<http://puppetlabs.com/>] configuration. You can edit all attributes like environment, classes, variables and parent node.

Configuration

To activate this feature please edit your LAM server profile and add the host module "Puppet (puppetClient)" on tab "Modules". This will add the Puppet tab to your host pages.

The screenshot shows the LAM Pro interface for configuring host modules. The "Hosts" section is active. The "Selected modules" list includes "Device (device)*" and "Puppet (puppetClient)". The "Available modules" list includes "Account (account)*", "Auto delete (autoDelete)", "Custom fields (customFields)", "Custom scripts (customScripts)", and "Custom type (customBaseType)*".

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

On tab "Module settings" in your LAM server profile you may also setup some common environment names. LAM will use them to provide autocompletion hints when editing the environment for a node.

If you enter any value in "Enforce classes" then LAM will only accept this list of classes.

The screenshot shows the Puppet configuration interface. On the left, there is a sidebar with a "Puppet" icon and label. The main area is divided into two sections: "Predefined environments" and "Enforce classes".

- Predefined environments:** A text input field containing "production" and "testing".
- Enforce classes:** A text input field containing "dhcp", "ldapclient", "ntp", "exim", and "webserver".

Editing nodes

When you edit a host entry then you will see the tab "Puppet". Here you can add/remove the Puppet extension and edit all attributes.

The screenshot shows the node editing interface for "demoserver". The breadcrumb path is "demo > machines > test > de". The RDN identifier is "cn".

On the left, there is a sidebar with "Device" and "Puppet" options. The "Puppet" option is selected.

On the right, there are several configuration fields:

- Environment:** "production" (with a "+" and "?" icon)
- Parent node:** "basenode" (dropdown menu)
- Classes:** "exim" (with "x", "+", and "?" icons) and "ntp" (with "x" icon)
- Variables:** "config_exim=true" (with "x", "+", and "?" icons) and "config_exim_trusted_users=root" (with "x" icon)

At the bottom right, there is a red button labeled "Remove Puppet extension".

NIS net groups

NIS netgroups can be used to e.g. restrict SSH access to your machines.

Configuration

Please add the module "NIS net groups (nisNetGroupHost)" to the list of active host modules.

The screenshot shows the Hosts configuration interface. The breadcrumb path is "Hosts".

On the left, there is a sidebar with a "Hosts" icon and label. The main area is divided into two sections: "Selected modules" and "Available modules".

Selected modules:

- Account (account)(*)
- Unix (posixAccount)
- NIS net groups (nisNetGroupHost)

Available modules:

- Auto delete (autoDelete)
- Custom fields (customFields)
- Custom scripts (customScripts)
- Custom type (customBaseType)(*)
- Device (device)(*)
- General information (generalInformation)

Host editing

You will now see a new tab when editing hosts. Here you can assign memberships in NIS net groups and also set user/domain.

Group	User name	Domain name
group01	user	
group02		

Password policy (LAM Pro)

See password policy for users.

Samba 3 domains

Samba 3 stores information about its domain settings inside LDAP. This includes the domain name, its SID and some policies. You can manage all these attributes with LAM.

Please activate the account type "Samba domains" in your LAM server profile. Please notice that Samba by default uses the LDAP root for domain objects (e.g. dc=example,dc=com).

Printers	PyKota printers	+
Samba domains	Samba 3 domain entries	+
Sudo roles	Sudo role management	+

This will add a new tab to LAM where you can manage domain information.

The domain name, SID and RID base can only be specified for new domains and are not changeable via LAM at a later time. You may setup several password policies for your Samba domains and also some RID options that influence the creation of SIDs for users/groups/hosts.

MyCompany S-1-2-33-1234-1234-1234

Suffix demo > domains ▾ RDN identifier sambaDomainName ?

Samba domain

Domain name MyCompany ?
Domain SID S-1-2-33-1234-1234-1234 ?

Password policy

Minimal password length	<input type="text" value="0"/>
Password history length	<input type="text" value="2"/>
Logon for password change	<input type="text" value="Off"/>
Disconnect users outside logon hours	<input type="text" value="On"/>
Allow machine password changes	<input type="text" value="-"/>
Lockout users after bad logon attempts	<input type="text"/>
Minimum password age	<input type="text"/>
Maximum password age	<input type="text" value="1209600"/>
Lockout duration	<input type="text"/>
Reset time after lockout	<input type="text"/>

RID settings

Next RID	<input type="text"/>
Next user RID	<input type="text"/>
Next group RID	<input type="text"/>
RID base	<input type="text" value="1000"/> ?

Group of (unique) names and group of members (LAM Pro)

These classes can be used to represent group relations. Since they allow DN's as members you can also use them to represent nested groups.

Configuration:

Activate the account type "Group of names" in your LAM server profile to use these account modules. Alternatively, you can use the account type "Groups".

Groups of names

Group of names accounts +

Groups of names

Group of names accounts ↑ ×


LDAP suffix *	<input type="text"/>	?
List attributes	<input type="text" value="#cn;#owner;#member;#uniqueMember"/>	?
Custom label	<input type="text"/>	?
Additional LDAP filter	<input type="text"/>	?
Read-only	<input type="checkbox"/> ?	
Hidden	<input type="checkbox"/> ?	
No new entries	<input type="checkbox"/> ?	
Disallow delete	<input type="checkbox"/> ?	

Then add the module "Group of names (groupOfNames)", "Group of unique names (groupOfUniqueNames)" or "Group of members (groupOfMembers)".







Managing entries in your LDAP directory

Groups of names

Selected modules


+

Group of names (groupOfNames)(*)
✕

Available modules



-  Auto delete (autoDelete) +
-  Custom fields (customFields) +
-  Custom scripts (customScripts) +
-  General information (generalInformation) +
-  Group of members (groupOfMembers)(*) +
-  Group of unique names (groupOfUniqueNames)(*) +

Groups of names

Selected modules

+

Group of members (groupOfMembers)(*)
✕

Available modules

-  Auto delete (autoDelete) +
-  Custom fields (customFields) +
-  Custom scripts (customScripts) +
-  General information (generalInformation) +
-  Group of names (groupOfNames)(*) +
-  Group of unique names (groupOfUniqueNames)(*) +
-  Kopano (kopanoGroup) +
-  Data (groupOfUniqueNames)(*) +

Virtual list attributes:

Groups of names

LDAP suffix *

List attributes

Custom label

Additional LDAP filter

Read-only

Hidden

No new entries

Disallow delete

Group of names accounts
↑ ✕

LDAP suffix * ?

List attributes ?

Custom label ?

Additional LDAP filter ?

The following virtual attributes can be shown in the group list. These are no real LDAP attributes but extra data that can be shown by LAM.

- member_count: number of entries in attribute "member"
- uniqueMember_count: number of entries in attribute "uniquemember"
- owner_count: number of entries in attribute "owner"
- roleOccupant_count: number of entries in attribute "roleOccupant"

Module settings:

On the module settings tab you set some options like the display format for members/owners and if fields like description should not be displayed.



Members are optional ?
Display format (cn) dn ?
Hidden options ?
Owners
Description

Group management:

Group of (unique) names have four basic attributes:

- Name: a unique name for the group
- Description: optional description
- Owner: the account which owns this group (optional)
- Members: the members of the group (at least one is required)

You can add any accounts as members. This includes other groups which leads to nested groups.

To show members of nested groups click on "Show effective members". Please note that for large groups this will run lots of queries against your LDAP server.

The screenshot shows the configuration page for a group named 'demo'. At the top, there is a breadcrumb trail: 'demo > gon > test > de'. The 'Suffix' is set to 'demo > gon > test > de' and the 'RDN identifier' is 'cn'. The group is identified as a 'Group of names'. The 'Name' field contains 'demo' and the 'Description' field contains 'Demo Group'. Under 'Owners', there is a 'Change' button and the current owner is '(Steve Miller) smiller > demo > People > test > de'. Under 'Members', there is a 'Change' button and a 'Show effective members' button. The list of members includes: 'demosub > demo > gon > test > de (Claudia Bach) cbach > demo > People > test > de', '(Franz Huber) fhuber > demo > People > test > de', '(Helmut Meier) hmeier > demo > People > test > de', and '(hschuster) hschuster > demo > People > test > de'.

Organizational roles (LAM Pro)

This module manages roles via the organizationalRole object class. There is also a user module to manage memberships on the user edit page.

Configuration:

Activate the account type "Groups" in your LAM server profile to use this account module. Alternatively, you can use the account type "Group of names".



Group accounts (e.g. Unix and Samba)



Managing entries in your LDAP directory

Roles

Group accounts (e.g. Unix and Samba) ↑ ↓ ✕

LDAP suffix * ?

List attributes ?

Custom label ?

Additional LDAP filter ?

Read-only ?

Hidden ?

No new entries ?

Disallow delete ?

Then add the module "Role (organizationalRole)".

Roles

Selected modules

- Role (organizationalRole)* ✕

Available modules

- AD LDS (windowsLDSGroup)* +
- Auto delete (autoDelete) +
- Custom fields (customFields) +
- Custom scripts (customScripts) +
- Custom type (customBaseType)* +

On the module settings tab you set some options like the display format for members and if description should not be displayed.

Role

Display format ?

Hidden options ?

Description

Role management:

You can add any accounts as members. This includes other roles which leads to nested roles (needs to be supported by LDAP client applications).

To show members of nested roles click on "Show effective members". Please note that for large roles this will run lots of queries against your LDAP server.

demo Demo Role

Suffix RDN identifier ?

Role

Name *

Description

Members ?

- cbach
- fhuber
- hmeier
- role1
- role2

Simple Security Object (LAM Pro)

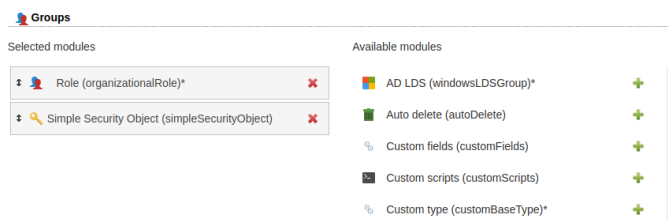
This allows to add passwords to LDAP entries which do not support passwords by other object classes. E.g. passwords can be added to organizational roles.

The simple security object module can be added to the following account types: users, groups, group of names and hosts

Attention: simple security objects require a password to be set. If you choose LDAP_EXOP as password hash then no new LDAP entries can be created. The reason is that EXOP requires to set the password on an already existing account (but simpleSecurityObject requires to set it in first place). So no password is set at the initial account creation which will then fail.

Configuration:

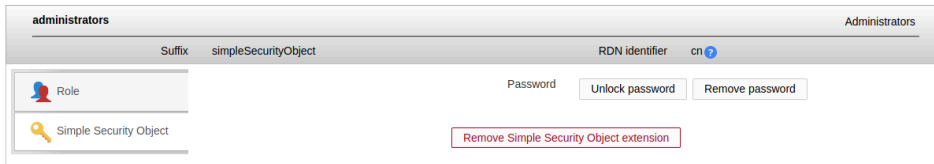
Add the Simple Security Object module to your account type.



Next configure the password hash type to use (module settings tab).



Now you can add a password to your entries by adding the extension to an entry.



Asterisk

LAM includes large support for Asterisk. You can add Asterisk extensions (including voicemail) to your users and also manage Asterisk extensions.

The Asterisk support for users can be added by selecting the Asterisk and Asterisk voicemail modules for users in your LAM server profile. This will add the following tabs to your user accounts.

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

Claudia Bach claudia.bach@ldap-account-manager.org Telephone number 0123-4567-8900 Mobile number 0123-4567-8922

Suffix: demo > People > test > de RDN identifier: uid

- Personal
- Unix
- Asterisk voicemail
- Asterisk

Caller ID*: demo
Host*: dynamic
Account context*: default
Account type*: friend
User agent:
AMA flags: -
Call groups:
DTFM flags: -

The Asterisk module allows to edit a large amount of attributes. Therefore, you can hide unused fields. Please edit your server profile (Module settings) to do so.

Asterisk

Asterisk realm: demo

Hidden options

User agent	<input type="checkbox"/>	AMA flags	<input type="checkbox"/>	Call groups	<input type="checkbox"/>
DTFM flags	<input type="checkbox"/>	From user	<input type="checkbox"/>	From domain	<input type="checkbox"/>
Full contact	<input type="checkbox"/>	Insecure	<input type="checkbox"/>	Mailbox	<input type="checkbox"/>
NAT	<input type="checkbox"/>	Deny	<input type="checkbox"/>	Permit	<input type="checkbox"/>
Pickup group	<input type="checkbox"/>	Port	<input type="checkbox"/>	Qualify	<input type="checkbox"/>
Restrict caller ID	<input type="checkbox"/>	RTP timeout	<input type="checkbox"/>	RTP hold timeout	<input type="checkbox"/>
Disallowed codec	<input type="checkbox"/>	Allowed codec	<input type="checkbox"/>	Music on hold	<input type="checkbox"/>
Expiration timestamp	<input type="checkbox"/>	Registration context	<input type="checkbox"/>	Registration extension	<input type="checkbox"/>
Can call forward	<input type="checkbox"/>	IP address	<input type="checkbox"/>	Default user	<input type="checkbox"/>
Registration server	<input type="checkbox"/>	Last qualify milliseconds	<input type="checkbox"/>		

Of course, the voicemail part of Asterisk is also supported.

Claudia Bach claudia.bach@ldap-account-manager.org Telephone number 0123-4567-8900 Mobile number 0123-4567-8922

Suffix: demo > People > test > de RDN identifier: uid

- Personal
- Unix
- Asterisk voicemail
- Asterisk

Mailbox*: demo
Account context*: context
Full name:
Email address:
Pager:
Options:
Voicemail context:

Remove Asterisk voicemail extension

If you also want to manage Asterisk extensions then simply add the account type "Asterisk extensions" and its module to your server profile.

LAM groups your Asterisk extension entries by extension name and account context. If you edit an extension then you will see the Asterisk entries as rules. LAM manages that all rule entries have the same owners and assigns the priorities.

demo

Suffix asteriskExt > test > de RDN identifier cn

Asterisk extension

Extension name * demo

Account context * demoContext

Rules

Application * app1

Application data data1

Delete rule ↓

Application * app2

Application data data2

Delete rule ↑

Kopano (LAM Pro)

Kopano is an OpenSource collaboration software. LAM Pro provides support to manage Kopano user entries, groups, address lists and servers. It covers all settings for these types including resource and quota settings.

Users

Configuration

To enable Kopano support for users please activate the Kopano module for the user account type in you server profile:

Users User accounts (e.g. Unix, Samba and Kolab) +

Adjust the suffix and list attributes to your needs.

Users User accounts (e.g. Unix, Samba and Kolab) ↓ ✖

LDAP suffix * ou=kopano,o=test,c=de

List attributes #uid;#givenName;#sn;#mail

Custom label

Additional LDAP filter

Read-only

Hidden

No new entries

Disallow delete

Then select the Kopano user module (tab Modules). You can combine it with Personal module, Unix or Windows.

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

The screenshot shows the 'Users' management interface. On the left, under 'Selected modules', there are two entries: 'Personal (inetOrgPerson)(*)' and 'Kopano (kopanoUser)'. On the right, under 'Available modules', there are five entries: 'Account (account)(*)', 'Account locking (locking389ds)', 'AD LDS (windowsLDSUser)(*)', 'Asterisk (asteriskAccount)', and 'Asterisk voicemail (asteriskVoicemail)'. Each entry has a plus sign icon to its right.

Next configure the module to your needs (tab Module settings).

Attention: LAM Pro uses the Kopano OpenLDAP schema by default. This schema fits for OpenLDAP, OpenDJ, Apache Directory server and other common LDAP servers. If you run Samba 4 or Active Directory then you need to switch the schema to "Active Directory" on the module settings tab.

You can hide options that you do not need. E.g. if you do not want to manage quotas per user then you can hide these options.

Examples for your Kopano ldap.cfg:

"Send as" attribute: dn

```
ldap_user_sendas_attribute_type = dn
```

"Send as" attribute: uid

```
ldap_user_sendas_attribute_type = text
```

```
ldap_user_sendas_relation_attribute = uid
```

Attention: If the Active Directory schema is used then LAM will always use dn and ignore this setting.

The screenshot shows the 'Kopano' module settings interface. At the top, there is a 'Kopano schema' dropdown menu set to 'LDAP'. Below this, under the 'Users' section, there are two dropdown menus: '"Send as" attribute' set to 'dn' and 'Display format' set to '(cn) dn'. At the bottom, there is a 'Hidden options' section with a list of checkboxes for various settings: Quota override, Quota hard limit, Type (Admin, Features), Quota warning limit, "Send as" privileges, Capacity, Archive servers, Quota soft limit, Shared store only, Active, User server, and Email aliases.

Usage

LAM Pro will now display the Kopano tab on your users. This includes email settings, quotas and some options (e.g. hide from address book). You can also set the resource type and capacity for meeting rooms and equipment. The Kopano extension can be added and removed at any time for every user.

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

Claudia Bach cbach@ldap-account-manager.org

Suffix kopano > test > de RDN identifier cn

Personal

Kopano

Email aliases + ?

"Send as" privileges ?

Quota

Quota override ?

Quota warning limit

Quota soft limit

Quota hard limit

Resource settings

Type

Capacity

Archiving

Archive servers ?

Options

Hidden ?

Shared store only ?

Active ?

Admin

User server

Features

IMAP

POP3

Contacts

Configuration

The configuration is similar to users. Instead of the Kopano user module please select the contact module.

Users User accounts (e.g. Unix, Samba and Kolab) +

Contacts User accounts (e.g. Unix, Samba and Kolab) ↑ ↓ ✕

LDAP suffix * ?

List attributes ?

Custom label ?

Additional LDAP filter ?

Read-only ?

Hidden ?

No new entries ?

Disallow delete ?

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

Contacts

Selected modules

- Personal (inetOrgPerson)(*)
- Kopano contact (kopanoContact)

Available modules

- Account (account)(*)
- Account locking (locking389ds)
- AD LDS (windowsLDSUser)(*)
- Asterisk (asteriskAccount)
- Asterisk voicemail (asteriskVoicemail)

Usage

LAM Pro will now display the Kopano contact tab on your users. The Kopano extension can be added and removed at any time for every user.

Franz Meier fmeier@dap-account-manager.org

Suffix: kopano2 > test > de RDN identifier: cn

Personal

Kopano contact

UID number: 1001

Email aliases

"Send as" privileges: Change

Options

Hidden:

Active:

Remove Kopano extension

Groups

Configuration

To enable Kopano support for groups please activate the Kopano module for the group account type in your server profile:

Groups Group accounts (e.g. Unix and Samba)

Adjust the suffix and list attributes to your needs.

Groups Group accounts (e.g. Unix and Samba)

LDAP suffix: ou=kopano,o=test,c=de

List attributes: #cn,#description,#member

Custom label

Additional LDAP filter

Read-only:

Hidden:

No new entries:

Disallow delete:

Then select the Kopano group module (tab Modules). You can combine it with groups of names module, Unix or Windows.

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

Groups

Selected modules

- Group of names (groupOfNames)(*)
- Kopano (kopanoGroup)

Available modules

- AD LDS (windowsLDSGroup)(*)
- Auto delete (autoDelete)
- Custom fields (customFields)
- Custom scripts (customScripts)

Next configure the module to your needs (tab Module settings).

Kopano

Groups

Display format: dn

Hidden options: ?

"Send as" privileges:

Usage

LAM Pro will now display the Kopano tab on your groups. The Kopano extension can be added and removed at any time for every group.

project1 Project 1

Suffix: kopano > test > de RDN identifier: cn

Group of names

Kopano

Email

Email: project1@dap-account-manager.org

Email aliases: + ?

"Send as" privileges: Change ?

Options

Security group: ?

Hidden: ?

Active: ?

Remove Kopano extension

Address lists

Configuration

To enable Kopano support for address lists please activate the Kopano address list account type in your server profile (tab account types):

Kopano address lists

Kopano address lists

+

Adjust the suffix and list attributes to your needs.

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

← Kopano address lists

Kopano address lists ↑ ↓ ✕

LDAP suffix * ?

List attributes ?

Custom label ?

Additional LDAP filter ?

Read-only ?

Hidden ?

No new entries ?

Disallow delete ?

Then select the Kopano address list module (tab Modules).

← Kopano address lists

Selected modules

Available modules

← Kopano address list (kopanoAddressList)(*) ✕

Auto delete (autoDelete) +

Custom fields (customFields) +

Custom scripts (customScripts) +

General information (generalInformation) +

Usage

LAM Pro will now display the Kopano address list tab.

Kopano address lists

New address list File upload Delete selected address lists

Address list count: 1

Actions	List name	Base	Filter
Sort sequence	▼ ▲	▼ ▲	▼ ▲
<input type="checkbox"/> Filter ▾	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	all	o=test,c=dea	(objectclass=kopano-user)

all

Suffix kopano > test > de RDN identifier cn ?

← Kopano address list

List name * ?

Base ?

Filter ?

Hidden ?

Active ?

Dynamic groups

Configuration

To enable Kopano support for dynamic groups please activate the Kopano dynamic group account type in your server profile (tab account types):

← Kopano dynamic groups

Kopano dynamic groups +

Adjust the suffix and list attributes to your needs.

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

← Kopano dynamic groups

Kopano dynamic groups ↑ ↓ ✕

LDAP suffix * ?

List attributes ?

Custom label ?

Additional LDAP filter ?

Read-only ?

Hidden ?

No new entries ?

Disallow delete ?

Then select the Kopano dynamic group module (tab Modules).

← Kopano dynamic groups

Selected modules

Available modules

✕ ← Kopano dynamic group (kopanoDynamicGroup)(*) ✕

- Auto delete (autoDelete) +
- Custom fields (customFields) +
- Custom scripts (customScripts) +
- General information (generalInformation) +

Usage

LAM Pro will now display the Kopano address list tab.

Kopano dynamic groups

New group File upload Delete selected groups

Group count: 5

Actions	Group name	Email	Email aliases	Base	Filter
Sort sequence					
<input type="checkbox"/> Filter ▾	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	munich	munich@ldap-account-manager.org		ou=kopano,o=test,c=de	l=Munich

munich munich@ldap-account-manager.org

Suffix kopano > test > de RDN identifier cn ?

← Kopano dynamic group

Group name *

Base

Filter

Email

Email

Email aliases + ?

Options

Hidden ?

Active ?

Servers

Configuration

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

To enable Kopano support for servers please activate the Kopano server module for the hosts account type in your server profile (tab account types):

■ Hosts Host accounts (e.g. Samba) +

Adjust the suffix and list attributes to your needs.

■ Hosts Host accounts (e.g. Samba) ↑ ×

LDAP suffix * ?

List attributes ?

Custom label ?

Additional LDAP filter ?

Read-only ?

Hidden ?

No new entries ?

Disallow delete ?

Then select the Kopano server module (tab Modules).

■ Hosts

Selected modules Available modules

Device (device)(*)	Account (account)(*)
IP address (ipHost)	Auto delete (autoDelete)
Kopano (kopanoServer)	Custom fields (customFields)
	Custom scripts (customScripts)
	Custom type (customBaseType)(*)

Next configure the module to your needs (tab Module settings).



Servers

Hidden options ?

Proxy URL

Usage

LAM Pro will now display the Kopano tab on your hosts. The Kopano extension can be added and removed at any time for every server.

server1 1234567890

Suffix kopano > test > de RDN identifier cn ?


Device	HTTP port <input type="text" value="80"/>
IP address	SSL port <input type="text" value="443"/>
Kopano	Proxy URL <input type="text"/>
	File path <input type="text"/>
	Public store <input type="checkbox"/> ?

Remove Kopano extension

Kolab shared folders

Please add the account type "Kolab shared folders" in your LAM server profile and set the correct LDAP suffix.

 Groups of names	Group of names accounts	+
 Hosts	Host accounts (e.g. Samba)	+
 Kolab shared folders	Kolab shared folders (e.g. mail folders)	+
 Kopano address lists	Kopano address lists	+
 Kopano dynamic groups	Kopano dynamic groups	+

 **Kolab shared folders** Kolab shared folders (e.g. mail folders) ↑ ✕

LDAP suffix * ?

List attributes ?

Custom label ?

Additional LDAP filter ?


Read-only ?

Hidden ?


No new entries ?

Disallow delete ?





Then add the "Kolab shared folder" module on tab "Modules".

 **Kolab shared folders**

Selected modules

✕  Kolab shared folder (kolabSharedFolder)(*)


Available modules

-  Auto delete (autoDelete) +
-  Custom fields (customFields) +
-  Custom scripts (customScripts) +
-  General information (generalInformation) +

Now you can start to add shared folders inside LAM.

demo

Suffix Shared Folders > ldap-account-manager > org RDN identifier cn ?

 Kolab shared folder

Name * ?

Email address * ?

Target IMAP folder * ?

Type ?

Allowed recipients + ?

Allowed senders + ?

Email aliases

+ ?

Delegates

v + ?

DHCP

You can manage your DHCP server with LAM. It supports to manage subnets, fixed IP entries, IP ranges and DDNS.

Configuration

The DHCP management can be activated by adding the account type DHCP to your server profile. Please also add the DHCP modules.

LAM requires that you use an LDAP entry with the object class "dhcpService" or "dhcpServer" as suffix for this account type. If the "dhcpServer" entry points to a "dhcpService" entry via "dhcpServiceDN" then you need to use the DN of the "dhcpService" entry as LDAP suffix for DHCP.

Add account type:

Account type	Description	Action
Aliases	Alias entries	+
Asterisk extensions	Asterisk extensions entries	+
Automount entries	Automount entries	+
Billing codes	PyKota billing codes	+
Bind DNS	Bind DNS entries	+
Custom type	Custom entries	+
DHCP	DHCP administration	+

Set suffix:

DHCP

DHCP administration

LDAP suffix *

List attributes #cn,#dhcpRange,#fixed_ips,#dhcpstatements;dhcpcomments:D

Custom label

Additional LDAP filter

Read-only

Hidden

No new entries

Disallow delete

Add modules:

DHCP

Selected modules

- DHCP settings (dhcp_settings)(*)
- Ranges (range)
- DDNS (ddns)
- Hosts (fixed_ip)

Available modules

- Auto delete (autoDelete)
- Custom fields (customFields)
- Custom scripts (customScripts)
- General information (generalInformation)

Example server entry:

```
dn: cn=server,ou=dhcp,dc=ldap-account-manager,dc=org
objectclass: dhcpServer
objectclass: dhcpOptions
objectclass: top
cn: server
dhcpcomments: My DHCP server
dhcption: domain-name "ldap-account-manager.org"
dhcption: domain-name-servers 192.168.1.1
dhcption: routers 192.168.1.1
dhcption: netbios-name-servers 192.168.1.1
dhcption: subnet-mask 255.255.255.0
dhcption: netbios-node-type 8
dhcpstatements: default-lease-time 3600
dhcpstatements: max-lease-time 7200
dhcpstatements: include "mykey"
dhcpstatements: ddns-update-style interim
dhcpstatements: update-static-leases true
dhcpstatements: ignore client-updates
```

Example settings for dhcpd.conf:

```
ddns-update-style none;
deny unknown-clients;
ldap-server "server";
ldap-dhcp-server-cn "server";
ldap-port 389;
ldap-username "uid=dhcp,ou=people,dc=ldap-account-manager,dc=org";
ldap-password "{SSHA}XXXXXXXXXXXX";
ldap-base-dn "ou=dhcp,dc=ldap-account-manager,dc=org";
ldap-method dynamic;
ldap-debug-file "/var/log/dhcp-ldap-startup.log";
```

slapd.conf changes:

```
include /etc/ldap/schema/dhcp.schema  
index dhcpHWAddress eq  
index dhcpClassData eq
```

Run slapindex to rebuild the index.

You can manage the settings of your DHCP service/server entry:

DHCP

[New DHCP](#) [File upload](#) [Delete selected DHCP entries](#) [DHCP settings](#)

DHCP count: 22

You can easily create new subnet entries.

192.168.1.0 Demo subnet

Suffix	server	RDN identifier	cn ?
DHCP settings	Subnet *	192.168.1.0	
Ranges	Domain name	demo	
DDNS	Lease time		
Hosts	Maximum lease time		
	DNS	192.168.1.1	
	Search domains		+ ?
	Default gateway	192.168.1.1	
	Netbios name servers	192.168.1.1	
	Netbios node type	H-Node (0x08)	
	Unknown clients		
	Subnet mask *	255.255.255.0	
	Description	Demo subnet	
	Net mask	24	

It is also possible to specify a list of fixed IPs.

192.168.1.0 Demo subnet

Suffix	server	RDN identifier	cn ?			
DHCP settings	IP address	PC name	MAC address	Description	Active	
Ranges	192.168.1.11	pc02	11:22:33:44:55:ab		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	✗
DDNS	192.168.1.12	pc03	11:22:33:44:55:a2		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	✗
Hosts	192.168.1.13	pc04	11:22:33:44:55:a1		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	✗
					<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	+

[Add existing host](#)

IP ranges may be specified.

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

If you use failover pools for your IP ranges please use the pool options on the bottom. Here you can add DHCP pools (object class "dhcpPool") and specify the failover peer.

192.168.1.0 Demo subnet

Suffix server RDN identifier cn ?

DHCP settings

Range from * 192.168.1.1 ?

Range to * 192.168.1.10 ?

Delete range ?

Ranges

Range from * 192.168.1.20 ?

Range to * 192.168.1.30 ?

Delete range ?

Range from * 192.168.1.40 ?

Range to * 192.168.1.50 ?

Delete range ?

New range ?

Pools

Name * pool1 ? Delete pool

Failover peer peer2 ?

Range from * 192.168.1.80 ?

Range to * 192.168.1.90 ?

Delete range ?

New range ?

New pool ?

If you activated DDNS in the server entry then you may also specify the DDNS settings for this subnet.

192.168.1.0 Demo subnet

Suffix server RDN identifier cn ?

DHCP settings

IP address of the DNS server 192.168.1.1 ?

Zone name zone ?

Reverse zone name 1.168.192.in-addr.arpa ?

Ranges

DDNS

Hosts

Bind DLZ (LAM Pro)

Bind DLZ [<http://bind-dlz.sourceforge.net>] is an extension to the DNS server Bind [<http://www.isc.org/software/bind>] that allows to store DNS entries inside LDAP. Please install the Bind DLZ schema file on your LDAP server. It is part of the Bind download. You can also get it from Bind's git repository [<https://gitlab.isc.org/isc-projects/bind9/blob/master/contrib/dlz/modules/ldap/testing/dlz.schema>].

Configuration

First, you need to add the Bind DNS account type and the Bind DLZ module:

Available account types		
Aliases	Alias entries	+
Asterisk extensions	Asterisk extensions entries	+
Automount entries	Automount entries	+
Billing codes	PyKota billing codes	+
Bind DNS	Bind DNS entries	+
Custom type	Custom entries	+

Please set the LDAP suffix either to an existing DNS zone (dlzZone) or an organizational unit that should include your DNS zones.

Active account types

Bind DNS

Bind DNS entries ↓ ✖

LDAP suffix * ?

List attributes ?

Custom label ?

Additional LDAP filter ?

Read-only ?

Hidden ?

No new entries ?

Disallow delete ?

For regular entry management use "DNS entry (bindDLZ)(*)" module.

Bind DNS

Selected modules

↑ 🌐 DNS entry (bindDLZ)(*) ✖

Available modules

- 🗑️ Auto delete (autoDelete) +
- 🔗 Custom fields (customFields) +
- 📜 Custom scripts (customScripts) +
- 📄 General information (generalInformation) +
- 🌐 XFR (bindDLZXfr)(*) +

XFR

If you want to edit XFR entries please add a second account type for XFR. Recommended list attributes are "#dlzipaddr;#dlzrecordid".

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

Bind XFR

LDAP suffix *

List attributes

Custom label

Additional LDAP filter

Read-only

Hidden

No new entries

Disallow delete

Bind DNS entries ↑ ✕

?

?

?

Now use the "XFR (bindDLZXfr)(*)" module for this account type.

Bind XFR

Selected modules

⌵
✕

XFR (bindDLZXfr(*))

Available modules

- + Auto delete (autoDelete)
- + Custom fields (customFields)
- + Custom scripts (customScripts)
- + DNS entry (bindDLZ)(*)
- + General information (generalInformation)

Automatic PTR management

LAM can automatically create/delete PTR entries for the entered IPv4/6 records. You can enable this feature on the module settings tab.

PTR records will get the same TTL as IP records. Please note that you need to have matching reverse zones (".in-addr.arpa"/".ip6.arpa") under the same suffix as your other DNS entries.

⚙️ General settings
👤 Account types
🗄️ Modules
⚙️ Module settings
🕒 Jobs

🌐 **DNS entry**

Automatic PTR changes ?

Zone management

If you do not yet have a DNS zone then LAM can create one for you. In list view switch the suffix to an organizational unit DN. Now you will see a button "New zone".

This will create the zone container entry and a default DNS entry "@" for authoritative information. Now switch the suffix to your new zone and start adding DNS entries.

Bind DNS

New DNS entry
File upload
Delete selected DNS entries
New zone

DNS entry count: 99

Actions	Host name	Zone name	Records
Sort sequence ▼ ▲			
<input type="checkbox"/> Filter ▼	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	1.1	168.192.in-addr.arpa	IN PTR:
<input type="checkbox"/>	2.1	168.192.in-addr.arpa	IN PTR:
<input type="checkbox"/>	4.5	1.2.in-addr.arpa	IN PTR:

DNS entries

LAM supports the following DNS record types:

- SOA: authoritative information
- NS: name servers
- A/AAAA: IP addresses
- PTR: reverse DNS entries
- CNAME: alias names
- MX: mail servers
- TXT: text records
- SRV: service entries

Authoritative (SOA) and name server (NS) records

Here you can manage general information about the zone like timeouts and name servers. Please note that name servers must be inserted in a special format (dot at the end).

@

Suffix example.com > demo > bind > test > de RDN identifier dlzHostName ?

DNS entry Host name @

IP addresses ("A/AAAA" records)

IP address ?	Timeout ?	Description ?	
1.1.1.1	2w		✘
2.2.2.2	2w		✘

Add

Authoritative information ("SOA" record)

Expiration time *	1w ?	Refresh time *	46m40s ?
Minimum time *	1d ?	Retry time *	2h ?
Timeout *	2w ?	Primary name server *	ns1.example.com. ?
Admin email *	root.example.com. ?	Serial number *	1 ?
Description			

Delete

Name servers ("NS" records)

Name server ?	Timeout ?	Description ?	
ns1.example.com.	2w		✘
ns2.example.com.	2w		✘

Add

IP addresses (A/AAAA)

LAM will automatically set the correct type (A/AAAA) depending if you enter an IPv4 or IPv6 address.

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

The screenshot shows a web interface for managing DNS entries. At the top, the title is 'www'. Below it, there's a breadcrumb trail: 'Suffix example.com > demo > bind > test > de'. To the right, there's an 'RDN identifier' field with the value 'dlzHostName'. The main content area is titled 'DNS entry' and shows the 'Host name' as 'www'. Underneath, there's a section for 'IP addresses ("A/AAAA" records)'. It contains two rows of input fields: 'IP address' with values '123.123.123.123' and '1:2:3:4:5:6', and 'Timeout' with values '2w'. There's also a 'Description' field. An 'Add' button is at the bottom left of this section.

Reverse DNS entries

Reverse DNS entries are important when you need to find the DNS name that is associated with a given IP address. Reverse DNS entries are stored in a separate DNS zone.

The screenshot shows a web interface for managing Reverse DNS entries. At the top, the title is '123.123'. Below it, there's a breadcrumb trail: 'Suffix 123.123.in-addr.arpa > demo > bind > test > de'. To the right, there's an 'RDN identifier' field with the value 'dlzHostName'. The main content area is titled 'DNS entry' and shows the 'Host name' as '123.123'. Underneath, there's a section for 'Reverse DNS entries ("PTR" records)'. It contains one row of input fields: 'Host name *' with the value 'www.demozone.', 'Timeout *' with the value '2w', and 'Description'. There's an 'Add' button at the bottom left of this section.

Alias names (CNAME)

Sometimes a DNS entry should simply point to a different DNS entry (e.g. for migrations). This can be done by adding an alias name.

The screenshot shows a web interface for managing Alias names. At the top, the title is 'www2'. Below it, there's a breadcrumb trail: 'Suffix example.com > demo > bind > test > de'. To the right, there's an 'RDN identifier' field with the value 'dlzHostName'. The main content area is titled 'DNS entry' and shows the 'Host name' as 'www2'. Underneath, there's a section for 'Alias name ("CNAME" record)'. It contains one row of input fields: 'Alias name *' with the value 'www', 'Timeout *' with the value '2w', and 'Description'. There's an 'Add' button at the bottom left of this section.

Mail servers (MX)

The mail server entries define where mails to a domain should be delivered. The server with the lowest preference has the highest priority.

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

www

Suffix RDN identifier

DNS entry Host name

IP addresses ("A/AAAA" records)

IP address ?	Timeout ?	Description ?	
<input type="text" value="123.123.123.123"/>	<input type="text" value="2m3s"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="X"/>
<input type="text" value="1:2:3:4:5:6"/>	<input type="text" value="2m3s"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="X"/>

Alias name ("DNAME" record)

Mail servers ("MX" records)

Mail server ?	Preference ?	Timeout ?	Description ?	
<input type="text" value="123.123.123.123"/>	<input type="text" value="50"/>	<input type="text" value="2w"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="X"/>

Text records (TXT)

Text records can be added to store a description or other data (e.g. SPF information).

server1

Suffix RDN identifier

DNS entry Host name

Alias name ("DNAME" record)

Text ("TXT" records)

Text ?	Timeout ?	Description ?	
<input type="text" value="This is a test server"/>	<input type="text" value="2w"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="X"/>
<input type="text" value="Managed by LAM Pro"/>	<input type="text" value="2w"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="X"/>

Services (SRV)

Service records can be used to specify which servers provide common services such as LDAP. Please note that the host name must be `_SERVICE._PROTOCOL` (e.g. `_ldap._tcp`).

Priority: The priority of the target host, lower value means more preferred.

Weight: A relative weight for records with the same priority. E.g. weights 20 and 80 for a service will result in 20% queries to the one server and 80% to the other.

Port: The port number that is used for your service.

Server: DNS name where service can be reached (with dot at the end).

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

_ldap_tcp
Suffix RDN identifier

DNS entry
Host name

Alias name ("DNAME" record)

Services ("SRV" records)

Priority *	<input type="text" value="10"/>	Weight *	<input type="text" value="80"/>	Port *	<input type="text" value="389"/>
Server *	<input type="text" value="ldap.example.com."/>	Timeout *	<input type="text" value="2w"/>	Description	<input type="text"/>
<input type="button" value="Delete"/>					
Priority *	<input type="text" value="10"/>	Weight *	<input type="text" value="20"/>	Port *	<input type="text" value="389"/>
Server *	<input type="text" value="ldap2.example.com."/>	Timeout *	<input type="text" value="2w"/>	Description	<input type="text"/>
<input type="button" value="Delete"/>					

File upload

You can upload complete DNS zones via LAM's file upload. Here is an example for a zone file and the corresponding CSV file.

Table 4.2. Zone file

@	IN	SOA	ns1.example.com admin.n-s1.example.com (1 360000 3600 3600000 370000)
	IN	NS	ns1.example.com.
	IN	NS	ns2.example.com.
	IN	MX	10 mail1.example.com
	IN	MX	20 mail2.example.com
foo	IN	A	123.123.123.100
foo2	IN	CNAME	foo.example.com
bar	IN	A	123.123.123.101
	IN	AAAA	1:2:3:4:5

Please check that you have an existing zone entry that can be used for the file upload. See above to create a new zone.

Hint: If you use the function above to create a new zone then please skip the "@" entry in the CSV file below. LAM creates this entry with sample data.

In this example we assume that the following zone entry exists:

```
dn: dlzZoneName=example.com,ou=bind,dc=example,dc=com
dlzzoneName: example.com
objectclass: dlzZone
objectclass: top
```

Here is the corresponding CSV file: bindUpload.csv [resources/bindUpload.csv]

XFR entries

You can manage the XFR entries in the second tab that you configured before.

Bind XFR

New DNS entry File upload Delete selected DNS entries New zone bind > test > de

DNS entry count: 5

Actions	IP address	Record ID
Sort sequence		
<input type="checkbox"/> Filter		
<input type="checkbox"/>	1.1.1.1	2
<input type="checkbox"/>	1.1.2.2	2
<input type="checkbox"/>	2:3:4:56:33	3
<input type="checkbox"/>	123.123.123.123	1
<input type="checkbox"/>	123.123.123.126	4

For each XFR entry you can set a record ID and the IP address.

2 > bind > test > de

Suffix bind > test > de RDN identifier dlzippaddr

XFR

Record ID * 2

IP address * 1.1.1.1

PowerDNS (LAM Pro)

This module allows to manage DNS entries for the PowerDNS name server.

Configuration

First, add the PowerDNS account type to your server profile:

Password policies	Password policies (ppolicy)	+
PowerDNS	PowerDNS entries	+
Printers	PyKota printers	+

Second, add the PowerDNS module to the new account type:

settings Account types Modules Module settings Jobs

PowerDNS

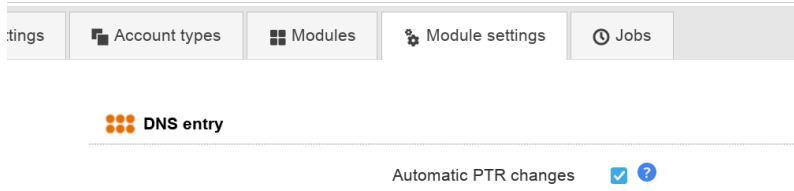
Selected modules

- DNS entry (powerDNS)*

Available modules

- Auto delete (autoDelete) +
- Custom fields (customFields) +
- Custom scripts (customScripts) +

Third, activate automatic generation of PTR entries if needed. This is only required if you did not configure PowerDNS itself to generate PTR entries dynamically.



Manage DNS entries

Now you can manage your DNS entries inside LAM.

LAM supports the following record types:

- A
- AAAA
- CNAME
- DNAME
- MX
- NS
- PTR
- SOA
- SRV
- TXT

PowerDNS

The screenshot shows the PowerDNS management interface. At the top, there are buttons for 'New DNS entry', 'File upload', and 'Delete selected DNS entries'. Below these is a dropdown menu showing 'powerdns > powerdns'. The 'DNS entry count: 1' is displayed. The main table has three columns: 'Actions', 'Domain name', and 'Records'. The table contains one row with the domain 'aaaa.test.de; aaaa2.test.de' and two AAAA records: '2003:d8:9f28:5100:fa32:e4ff:fec0:8d98' and 'fe80::fa32:e4ff:fec0:8d98'.

Actions	Domain name	Records
Sort sequence Filter <input type="checkbox"/> ∇ ✖	<input type="text" value="aaaa"/>	<input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	aaaa.test.de; aaaa2.test.de	AAAA 2003:d8:9f28:5100:fa32:e4ff:fec0:8d98 AAAA fe80::fa32:e4ff:fec0:8d98

The screenshot shows the configuration page for a DNS entry named 'aaaa.test.de'. The interface includes a breadcrumb 'powerdns > powerdns' and an RDN identifier 'dc'. The entry is categorized as a 'DNS entry'. Fields include 'Name' (aaaa.test.de), 'Associated domains' (aaaa.test.de and aaaa2.test.de), and 'Timeout'. Below, there are sections for 'IP addresses ("A/AAAA" records)' with fields for 'IP address' and 'IPv6 address' (2003:d8:9f28:5100:fa32:e4ff:fec0:8d98 and fe80::fa32:e4ff:fec0:8d98), and a 'Text ("TXT" records)' section with a 'Text' field.

Aliases (LAM Pro)

Some applications use the object class "alias" to link LDAP entries to other parts of the LDAP tree. Activate the account type "Aliases" in your LAM server profile to use this account type.

Currently, only user accounts can be aliased with the "uidObject" object class.

The screenshot shows the configuration page for an alias named 'smiller'. The 'Suffix' is set to 'aliases' and the 'RDN identifier' is 'uid'. The 'User name' field is filled with 'smiller'. The left sidebar shows 'User name' and 'Alias' options.

This screenshot shows the same configuration page for the alias 'smiller', but now it displays the 'Aliased entry' path: 'smiller > People > company > com'. A 'Change' button is visible at the bottom right.

Mail aliases

You can manage mail aliases (e.g. for NIS) inside LAM. This can be used to replace local /etc/aliases files with LDAP.

To activate this type please add "Mail aliases" in your LAM server profile:

- | | | |
|-----------------------|---|--|
| Kopano dynamic groups | Kopano dynamic groups | |
| Mail aliases | Mailing aliases (e.g. NIS mail aliases) | |
| MIT Kerberos policies | MIT Kerberos policies | |

NIS mail aliases

Note: Use the mail alias user module to manage mail aliases on user pages.

All accounts of this type are based on the "nisMailAlias" object class and may have "cn" and "rfc822MailMember" attributes.

You need to select the Mail aliases module on the next tab.

The screenshot shows the 'Mail aliases' configuration page. On the left, under 'Selected modules', there is a single entry: 'Mail aliases (nisMailAlias)*' with a red 'X' icon to its right. On the right, under 'Available modules', there are four entries: 'Auto delete (autoDelete)', 'Courier (courierMailAlias)', 'Custom fields (customFields)', and 'Custom scripts (customScripts)', each with a green plus sign icon to its right.

The mail aliases will then appear as separate tab inside LAM. You may then manage the aliases with their names and recipient addresses.

There are mail/user icons that allow to select a mail address/user name from the existing users.

The screenshot shows the configuration form for a mail alias named 'claudiabach'. The 'Suffix' is 'mailaliases > test > de' and the 'RDN identifier' is 'cn'. The 'Alias name' field contains 'claudiabach'. The 'Recipient' field contains 'claudia.bach@ldap-account-manager.org' and has a mail icon, a user icon, a red 'X' icon, and a blue question mark icon. The 'New recipient' field is empty and has a mail icon, a user icon, a green plus icon, and a blue question mark icon.

Courier mail aliases

Mail aliases for Courier SMTP can be used when activating NIS mail aliases and Courier modules:

The screenshot shows the 'Mail aliases' configuration page. Under 'Selected modules', there are two entries: 'Mail aliases (nisMailAlias)*' and 'Courier (courierMailAlias)', both with red 'X' icons to their right. Under 'Available modules', there are four entries: 'Auto delete (autoDelete)', 'Custom fields (customFields)', 'Custom scripts (customScripts)', and 'General information (generalInformation)', each with a green plus sign icon to its right.

You will then get the Courier tab for your mail aliases.

The screenshot shows the configuration form for a mail alias named 'demo'. The 'Suffix' is 'aliases' and the 'RDN identifier' is 'cn'. The 'Email address' field contains 'demo@ldap-account-manager.org'. The 'Recipient address' field contains 'project1@ldap-account-manager.org' and has a red 'X' icon, a green plus icon, and a blue question mark icon. The 'Mail source' field is empty. The 'Description' field contains 'Demo alias'.

NIS net groups

LAM supports to define NIS netgroups. You can use them e.g. to restrict SSH access to your machines.

Add the NIS net group account type and its module to your server profile. Then you can manage net groups in LAM. Net groups may contain other net groups as child groups. You can either insert the host/user names manually or print the search buttons next to the input fields to find existing entries in your directory.

The screenshot shows the LAM web interface for managing a NIS net group. The breadcrumb path is "demo" > "Suffix" > "netgroups > test > de". The RDN identifier is "cn". The group name is "demo", the description is "Demo group", and the subgroups are "administrators, group01, group02". There is an "Edit subgroups" button. The "Members" section is empty, with columns for Host, User, and Domain. The Host column has three empty input fields. The User column has "user1" and "user2" with search icons. The Domain column has "mydomain" with a red 'x' icon, and two empty input fields with red 'x' and green '+' icons.

NIS objects (LAM Pro)

You can manage NIS objects with LAM Pro. This allows you define network mount points in LDAP.

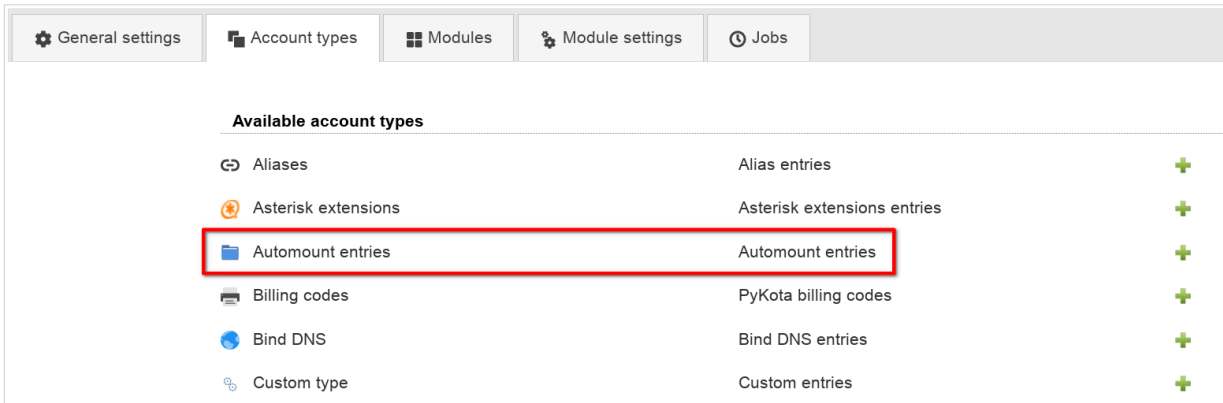
Add the NIS objects type to your LAM configuration and then the NIS objects module. This will add the NIS objects tab to LAM.

The screenshot shows the LAM web interface for managing a NIS object. The breadcrumb path is "/home" > "Suffix" > "nisObjects > test > de". The RDN identifier is "cn". The object name is "/home", the mapping name is "auto.home", the mapping entry is "-fstype=nfs,rw homeserver:/home", and the description is "Network home".

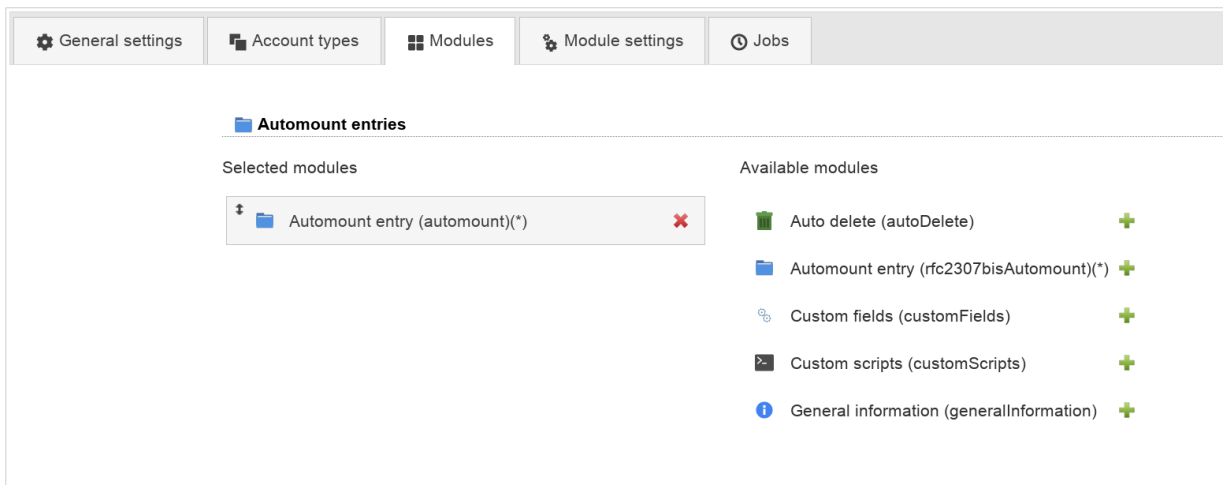
Automount objects (LAM Pro)

LAM Pro allows you to manage automount entries. Please activate the account type "Automount objects" in your LAM Pro server profile.

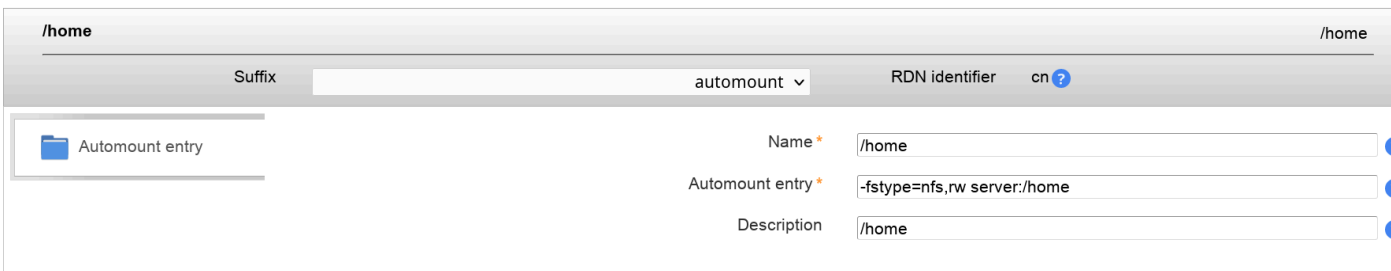
Managing entries in your LDAP directory



Then add the correct automount module. Usually, this is "Automount entry (automount)". If you use Suse Linux with RFC2307bis schema please select "Automount entry (rfc2307bisAutomount)".



This will add a new tab to LAM Pro's main screen which includes a list of all automount entries. Here you can easily create new entries.



Please see the following external HowTos for more information on automounting and LDAP:

- AutofsLDAP [<https://help.ubuntu.com/community/AutofsLDAP>]
- Automount über LDAP (German) [<http://www.pro-linux.de/artikel/2/760/automount-ueber-ldap.html>]

Oracle databases (LAM Pro)

Oracle allows to manage connection data that is stored in tnsnames.ora to be stored in an LDAP directory.

Initial setup

LDAP server setup:

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

You will need to install the correct Oracle LDAP schema files on your LDAP server. If you run no Oracle LDAP server then you can get them (oidbase.schema, oidnet.schema, oidrdbms.schema, alias.schema) e.g. from here [http://www.idevelopment.info/data/Oracle/DBA_tips/LDAP/LDAP_8.shtml].

Next you need to create the root entry for Oracle. It should look like this:

```
dn: cn=OracleContext,dc=example,dc=com
objectclass: orclContext
cn: OracleContext
```

You can create it with LAM's tree view (tools menu). Please note that "cn" must be set to "OracleContext".


LAM setup:

Edit your LAM server profile and add the Oracle account type:

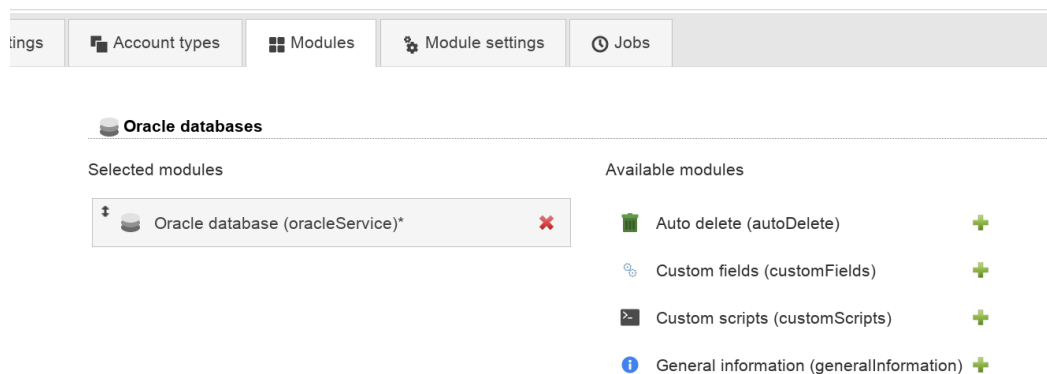
 NIS objects	NIS object entries	+
 Oracle databases	Oracle database entries	+
 Password policies	Password policies (ppolicy)	+

In case you manage a single Oracle context just enter the cn=OracleContext entry as LDAP suffix. If you manage multiple Oracle context entries then set the LDAP suffix to a parent entry of them.

Active account types

 Oracle databases	Oracle database entries	↓ ×
LDAP suffix *	<input type="text" value="ou=oracle,o=test,c=de"/>	?
List attributes	<input type="text" value="#cn,#orclNetDescString:#description"/>	?
Custom label	<input type="text"/>	?
Additional LDAP filter	<input type="text"/>	?
Read-only	<input type="checkbox"/>	?
Hidden	<input type="checkbox"/>	?
No new entries	<input type="checkbox"/>	?
Disallow delete	<input type="checkbox"/>	?

Next, add the Oracle module:

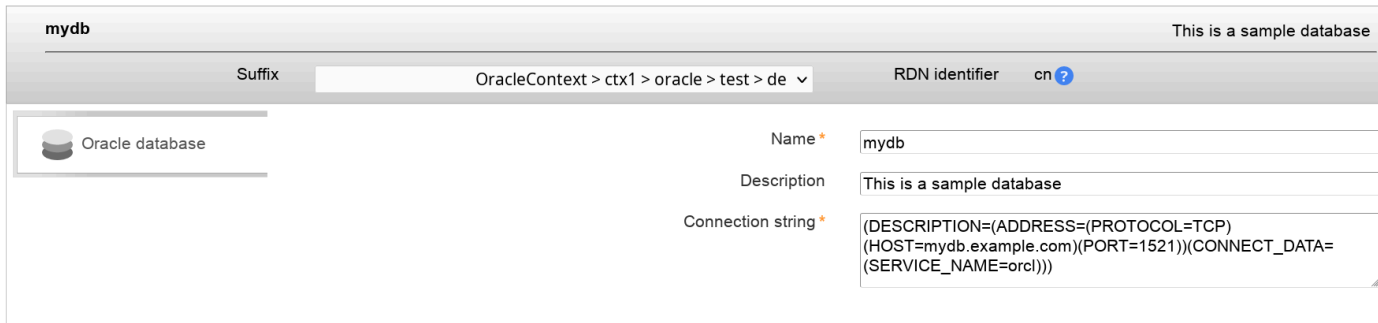


The screenshot shows the 'Account types' configuration page in LAM. The 'Oracle databases' section is active. Under 'Selected modules', 'Oracle database (oracleService)*' is listed with a red 'x' icon. Under 'Available modules', four modules are listed with green '+' icons: 'Auto delete (autoDelete)', 'Custom fields (customFields)', 'Custom scripts (customScripts)', and 'General information (generalInformation)'.

Now you can login to LAM and start to add database entries.

Managing database entries

Each database has a service name, the connection string and an optional description.



Database client setup for LDAP

You need to activate the LDAP adapter to make the database tools reading LDAP. Edit network/admin/sqlnet.ora like this:

```
NAMES.DIRECTORY_PATH= (TNSNAMES, LDAP)
```

Then add a file called ldap.ora next to your sqlnet.ora and set the LDAP server and DN suffix where cn=OracleContext is stored:

```
DIRECTORY_SERVERS= (ldap.example.com:389:636)
DEFAULT_ADMIN_CONTEXT = "ou=ctx1,ou=oracle,o=test,c=de"
DIRECTORY_SERVER_TYPE = OID
```

This will allow e.g. tnsping to get the connection data from LDAP:

```
[oracle@oracle bin]$ tnsping mydb
```

```
TNS Ping Utility for Linux: Version 12.1.0.1.0 - Production on 09-FEB-2014 18:06:54
```

```
Copyright (c) 1997, 2013, Oracle. All rights reserved.
```

Used parameter files:

```
/home/oracle/app/oracle/product/12.1.0/dbhome_1/network/admin/sqlnet.ora
```

Used **LDAP** adapter to resolve the alias

```
Attempting to contact (DESCRIPTION=(ADDRESS=(PROTOCOL=TCP)(HOST=mydb.example.com)(PORT=1521))
OK (10 msec)
```

Password policies (LAM Pro)

OpenLDAP supports the ppolicy [<http://linux.die.net/man/5/slapo-ppolicy>] overlay to manage password policies for LDAP entries. This allows you to set password policies which are independent from your applications. The policies are managed internally by the LDAP server.

You can manage these policies with LAM Pro with the account type "Password policies".

The screenshot shows a web interface for managing LDAP entries. At the top, there's a breadcrumb trail: "demo > policies > test > de". The RDN identifier is "cn". The main content area is titled "Password policy" and contains the following configuration fields:

Name *	demo
Minimum password age	1d
Maximum password age	1y
Expire warning	
Grace authentication limit	
Password history length	10
Password quality check	yes
Minimum password length	
Lockout users	<input type="checkbox"/>
Lockout duration	
Maximum failure count	
Failure count interval	
Require password change on first login	<input type="checkbox"/>
Allow password change	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Password change requires old password	<input type="checkbox"/>
Password check module	

You will need to add the ppolicy schema to your OpenLDAP configuration and activate the ppolicy [<http://linux.die.net/man/5/slapo-ppolicy>] overlay module in slapd.conf to use this feature.

MIT Kerberos policies (LAM Pro)

Please add the account type "MIT Kerberos policies" on tab "Account types" in your server profile and setup the LDAP suffix where printers are stored.

The screenshot shows the configuration form for "MIT Kerberos policies". The form includes the following fields and options:

LDAP suffix *	cn=LAM.LOCAL,cn=mitkerberos,o=test,c=de
List attributes	#cn;#krbMinPwdLife;#krbMaxPwdLife;#krbPwdMinLength;#krbP
Custom label	
Additional LDAP filter	
Read-only	<input type="checkbox"/>
Hidden	<input type="checkbox"/>
No new entries	<input type="checkbox"/>
Disallow delete	<input type="checkbox"/>

Then add the "Password policy (mitKerberosPolicy)" module on tab "Account modules".

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

MIT Kerberos policies

Selected modules

✚ Password policy (mitKerberosPolicy)(*) ✖

Available modules

- 🗑️ Auto delete (autoDelete) +
- 🔗 Custom fields (customFields) +
- 📄 Custom scripts (customScripts) +
- ℹ️ General information (generalInformation) +

Now login to LAM and you will see the MIT Kerberos policies tab. Here you can manage the different policies.

demo

Suffix LAM.LOCAL > mitkerberos > test > de RDN identifier cn ?

🔒 Password policy

Name *	demo
Minimum password age	
Maximum password age	1y
Minimum password length	3
Password history length	1
Maximum failure count	3
Lockout duration	2h
Failure count interval	1h
Minimum character classes	1
Allowed key/salt types	

PyKota printers

Please add the account type "Printers (PyKota printers)" on tab "Account types" in your server profile and setup the LDAP suffix where printers are stored.

Printers

PyKota printers +

Printers

PyKota printers ↑ ↓ ✖

LDAP suffix *	ou=printers,ou=pykota,o=test,c=de ?
List attributes	#cn,#description,#pykotaPricePerPage,#pykotaPricePerJob;#py ?
Custom label	?
Additional LDAP filter	?
Read-only	<input type="checkbox"/> ?
Hidden	<input type="checkbox"/> ?
No new entries	<input type="checkbox"/> ?
Disallow delete	<input type="checkbox"/> ?

Then add the PyKota printer module on tab "Account modules".

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

Printers

Selected modules

PyKota (pykotaPrinter)*

Available modules

- Auto delete (autoDelete) +
- Custom fields (customFields) +
- Custom scripts (customScripts) +
- General information (generalInformation) +

Next you can start managing printers inside LAM. Here you can setup the costs for a print job. LAM will also show if the printer is member of any printer groups.

printer3 My printer

Suffix: printers > pykota > test > de RDN identifier: cn ?

PyKota

Printer name * printer3

Maximum job size 0

Price per job 1.0

Price per page 0.5

Passthrough No

Description My printer

Printer groups printergroup5, printergroup7

Group members + ?

You can also setup printer groups. Just add some members to your new group.

printergroup My printer group

Suffix: printers > pykota > test > de RDN identifier: cn ?

PyKota

Printer name * printergroup

Maximum job size 0

Price per job 1.0

Price per page 0.5

Passthrough No

Description My printer group

Group members printer1 ✗ printer2 ✗ + ?

PyKota billing codes

Please add the account type "Billing codes" on tab "Account types" in your server profile and setup the LDAP suffix where billing codes are stored.

Billing codes

PyKota billing codes



Managing entries in your LDAP directory

Billing codes PyKota billing codes ↑ ↓ ✕

LDAP suffix * ?

List attributes ?

Custom label ?

Additional LDAP filter ?

Read-only ?

Hidden ?

No new entries ?

Disallow delete ?

Then add the PyKota billing code module on tab "Account modules".

Billing codes

Selected modules

PyKota (pykotaBillingCode)* ✕

Available modules

- Auto delete (autoDelete) +
- Custom fields (customFields) +
- Custom scripts (customScripts) +

Now login to LAM and you will see the billing code tab where you can manage your entries. If jobs were printed with a billing code then you will also see the balance and page count.

billingCode01 Some billing code

Suffix `billingcodes > pykota > test > de` RDN identifier `cn` ?

PyKota

Billing code *

Balance ?

Page count ?

Description

?

Custom types (LAM Pro)

This account type allows you to manage any type of LDAP entries. This is e.g. needed if you define your own structural object classes or LAM does not yet provide a module for a structural object class.

Always use this together with Custom fields to specify the LDAP attributes.

Configuration

Add a custom account type in your server profile (you can also add multiple if needed).

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

Account type	Description	Action
Aliases	Alias entries	+
Asterisk extensions	Asterisk extensions entries	+
Automount entries	Automount entries	+
Billing codes	PyKota billing codes	+
Bind DNS	Bind DNS entries	+
Custom type	Custom entries	+
DHCP	DHCP administration	+

Then specify the root DN where the entries should be stored. Also provide the attributes to show in list view and a unique label for your entries.

Custom entries configuration:

- LDAP suffix:
- List attributes:
- Custom label:
- Additional LDAP filter:
- Read-only:
- Hidden:
- No new entries:
- Disallow delete:

On tab modules add the custom type module. You will also need the Custom fields module to manage the attributes.

Custom entries module configuration:

Selected modules:

- Custom type (customBaseType)(*)
- Custom fields (customFields)

Available modules:

- Auto delete (autoDelete)
- Custom scripts (customScripts)
- General information (generalInformation)

Finally, switch to tab Module settings. Here you need to specify the structural object class. Also configure the Custom fields module to manage all your attributes.

Custom type module settings:

Object class:

Manage your entries

You can now login to LAM and will see one tab for each configured custom type.

















Custom entries

New entry

File upload

Delete selected entries

Entry count: 4

Actions	Common name	Port	Protocol
Sort sequence	▼ ▲	▼ ▲	▼ ▲
<input type="checkbox"/> Filter ▾	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>    	service1	12345	http
<input type="checkbox"/>    	service2	12345	http
<input type="checkbox"/>    	service3	1236	http
<input type="checkbox"/>    	test4	12	tcp

Custom fields (LAM Pro)

This module allows you to manage LDAP attributes that are not covered by the other LAM modules (e.g. if you use a custom LDAP schema). You can fully define how your input fields look like:

- Label
- LDAP attribute name
- Unique name for field
- Help text
- Read-only display
- Field type: text, password, text area, checkbox, radio buttons, select list, file upload, LDAP date (and time), constant
- Validation via regular expression
- Error message if validation fails

Limitations:

Custom fields cannot manage

- structural object classes (supported by Custom types)
- attributes that require validation rules across multiple attributes or cannot be described by a simple regular expression

Activating the custom fields module:

You may specify custom fields for all of your account types. Please enter tab "Modules" in your server profile. Now activate the "Custom fields (customFields)" module for all needed account types.

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

The screenshot shows the 'Users' module settings page. The navigation bar includes 'General settings', 'Account types', 'Modules', 'Module settings', and 'Jobs'. The 'Users' section is active. It displays two columns: 'Selected modules' and 'Available modules'. The 'Selected modules' column contains 'Personal (inetOrgPerson)(*)' and 'Custom fields (customFields)'. The 'Available modules' column contains 'Account (account)(*)', 'Account locking (locking389ds)', 'AD LDS (windowsLDSUser)(*)', 'Asterisk (asteriskAccount)', 'Asterisk voicemail (asteriskVoicemail)', and 'Authorized Services (authorizedServiceObject)'.

Setting label and icon:

You may set the label that is displayed e.g. on the tab when editing an account. It is also possible to specify an icon (must be a valid URL like `/images/icon.png` or `http://server/images/icon.png`). The icon size should be 32x32 pixels.

LAM will display a default icon and "Custom fields" as label if you do not enter any values.

You may also specify how LAM displays custom fields when there are multiple field groups. The default is accordion view where you can switch field groups by clicking on the title. You may also deactivate this mode. Then all field groups are displayed one below the other.

Custom fields

Appearance

Display multiple groups as accordion ?

Users

Label ?
Icon ?

Defining groups:

All input fields are divided into groups. A group may contain one or more object classes and allows you to add/remove a certain set of input fields.

E.g. you may define two groups - "My application A" and "My application B" - that manage different LDAP attributes and object classes. This way you will be able to control both attribute sets independently.

To create a group please edit your server profile and switch to tab "Module settings". You will see the section "Custom fields" which allows you to add new groups. Now select your account type (e.g. Users) and specify an alias for your group. This alias will be printed as group header when you later edit an account in the admin interface.

Create new group

Account type ▾
Alias * ?
 ?

After you created your new group you can setup the managed object classes. If you specify any object classes then you will later be able to add/remove a complete set of attributes including their object classes.

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

Skipping the object classes field is only useful if you want to manage some attributes that are not yet supported by LAM but there is already a LAM module that manages the object class.

Create new group

Account type

Alias *

Personal

Account type

Alias *

Object classes

Add new field

Move

Delete group

The group may look like when you edit a user.

Claudia Bach claudia.bach@ldap-account-manager.org Telephone number 0123-4567-8900 Mobile number 0123-4567-8922

Suffix RDN identifier

Personal

Unix

Password policy

Custom fields

Application A

Claudia Bach claudia.bach@ldap-account-manager.org Telephone number 0123-4567-8900 Mobile number 0123-4567-8922

Suffix RDN identifier

Personal

Unix

Password policy

Custom fields

Application A

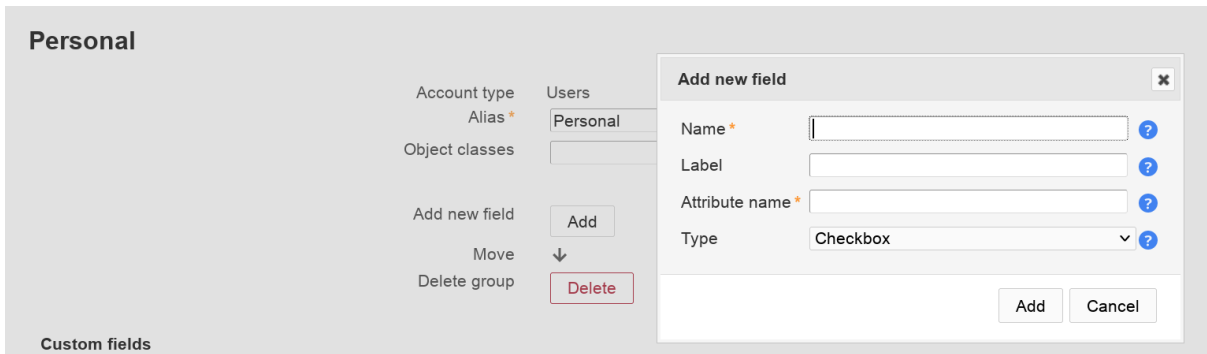
Routing address

Active

Adding fields:

Now you can add a new field that manages an LDAP attribute. Simply fill the fields and press on "Add".

Please note that the field name cannot be changed later. It is the unique ID for this field.



Examples for fields and their representation:

Text field:

Text fields allow to specify a validation expression and error message.

You can also enable auto-completion. In this case LAM will search all accounts for the given attribute and provide auto-completion hints when the user edits this field. This should only be used if there is a limited number of different values for this attribute.

In case your field is a date value you can show a calendar for easy editing.

Example calendar formats:

- d.m.Y: 31.12.2025
- Y-m-d: 2025-12-31
- d M, y: 31 Dec, 25
- d MM, Y: 31 December, 2025

You can escape wildcards with "\". E.g. "d.m.Y \d" will result in "31.12.2025 d".

Profile editor: For multi-value fields you can separate multiple values by semicolon in profile editor (e.g. "value1; value2"). LAM will split the text when loading the profile.

givenName ✖

Type	Text field
Label	First name
Attribute name *	givenName
Help text	
Required	<input type="checkbox"/>
Validation	Regular expression
Validation expression	/^[a-zA-Z]*\$/
Validation message	Please enter a valid first name.
Allow multiple values	<input type="checkbox"/>
Minimum	
Maximum	
Auto-completion	<input type="checkbox"/>

Presentation:

First name

Password field:

You can also manage custom password fields. LAM Pro will display two fields where the user must enter the same password. You can hash the password if needed.

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

customPassword ✖

Type	Password
Label	<input type="text" value="Custom Password"/>
Attribute name *	<input type="text" value="userPassword"/>
Help text	<input type="text"/>
Validation	Regular expression
Validation expression	<input type="text"/>
Validation message	<input type="text"/>
Password hash type	<input type="text" value="ARGON2ID"/>

Presentation:

Custom Password

Text area:

This adds a multi-line field. The options are similar to text fields. Additionally, you can set the size with the number of columns and rows.

Please note that the validation expression should be set to multi-line. This is done by adding "m" at the end.

postalAddress ✖

Type	Text area
Label	<input type="text" value="Postal address"/>
Attribute name *	<input type="text" value="postalAddress"/>
Help text	<input type="text"/>
Required	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Validation	Regular expression
Validation expression	<input type="text" value="/[0-9a-zA-Z]*\$/m"/>
Validation message	<input type="text" value="Invalid postal address"/>
Columns	<input type="text" value="25"/>
Rows	<input type="text" value="4"/>

Presentation:

Postal address*

Checkbox:

Sometimes you may want to allow only yes/no values for your LDAP attributes. This can be represented by a checkbox. You can specify the values for checked and unchecked. The default value is set if the LDAP attribute has no value.

carLicense ✖

Type	Checkbox
Label	<input type="text" value="Car license"/>
Attribute name *	<input type="text" value="carLicense"/>
Help text	<input type="text"/>
Value for "checked" *	<input type="text" value="yes"/>
Value for "unchecked" *	<input type="text" value="no"/>
Default value	<input type="checkbox"/>

Presentation:

Car license

Radio buttons:

This displays a list of radio buttons where the user can select one value.

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

You can specify a mapping of LDAP attribute values and their display (label) on the Self Service page. To add more mapping fields please press "Add more mapping fields".

businessCategory ✖

Type: Radio buttons

Label: ?

Attribute name *: ?

Help text: ?

Value mapping ?

Value	Label
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="-"/>
<input type="text" value="hr"/>	<input type="text" value="Human Resources"/>
<input type="text" value="it"/>	<input type="text" value="IT"/>
<input type="text" value="man"/>	<input type="text" value="Management"/>
<input type="text" value="org"/>	<input type="text" value="Organisation"/>

Presentation:

Business category

-
- Human Resources
- IT
- Management
- Organisation

Select list:

Select lists allow the user to select a value in a large list of options. The definition of the possible values and their display is similar to radio buttons.

You can also allow multiple values.

departmentNumber ✖

Type: Select list

Label: ?

Attribute name *: ?

Help text: ?

Allow multiple values: ?

Minimum: ?

Maximum: ?

Value mapping ?

Value	Label
<input type="text" value="car"/>	<input type="text" value="Automotive"/>
<input type="text" value="it"/>	<input type="text" value="IT Consulting"/>
<input type="text" value="bank"/>	<input type="text" value="Financial Services"/>
<input type="text" value="insurance"/>	<input type="text" value="Insurance"/>

Presentation:

Department: ▼

Location:

LDAP search select list

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

This is similar to "Select list" but the options are read from LDAP. You can use this to define e.g. a DN selection list. Multiple values are supported.

manager ✖

Type	LDAP search select list
Label	Manager ?
Attribute name *	manager ?
Help text	Manager value ?
Allow multiple values	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ?
Minimum	1 ?
Maximum	3 ?
LDAP suffix *	?
LDAP filter *	(objectclass=*) ?
Attribute name *	dn ?
Displayed attributes *	\$dn\$?

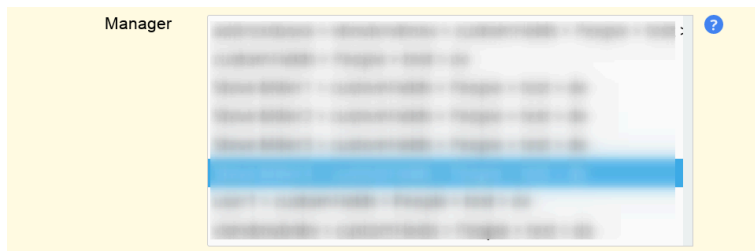
LDAP suffix: The LDAP DN that is used as starting point to search for LDAP entries.

LDAP filter: Only LDAP entries that match this filter will be used. If all entries should be used then use "(objectclass=*)".

Attribute name: The values of this attribute will be used to build the selection list.

Display attributes: List of attributes to show as label for the options in select box. Attribute wildcards are surrounded by "\$", e.g. "\$cn\$" will be replaced by "cn" attribute. Default is "\$dn\$".

Presentation:



LDAP date

Use this for LDAP attributes with syntax "Generalized Time" (1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.24).

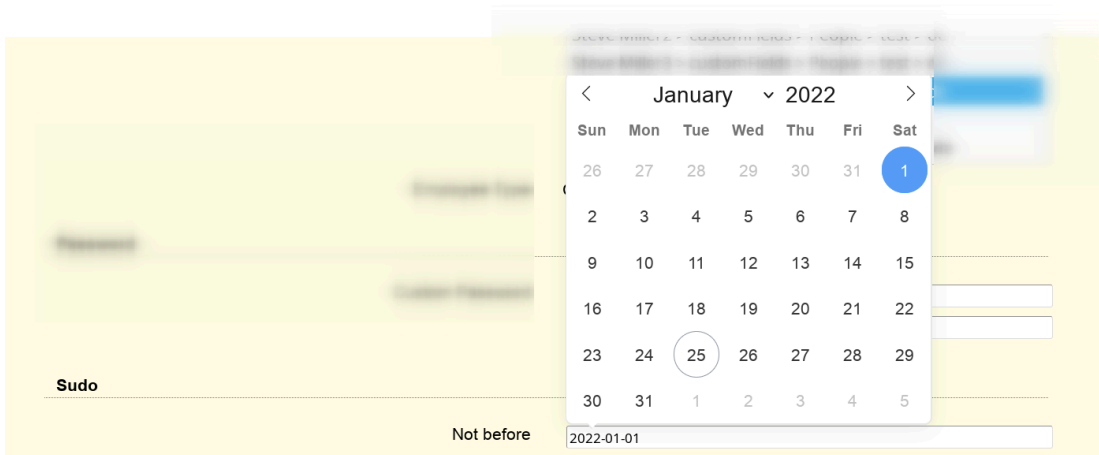
LAM will automatically set hour/minute/second to "0". If this is not intended please use type "LDAP date and time".

sudoNotBefore ✖

Type	LDAP date
Label	Not before ?
Attribute name *	sudoNotBefore ?
Help text	?
Required	<input type="checkbox"/> ?
Allow multiple values	<input type="checkbox"/>
Format	Y-m-d ?
Validation message	?

Presentation:

LAM will display a calendar to select the date.



LDAP date and time

Use this for LDAP attributes with syntax "Generalized Time" (1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.24).

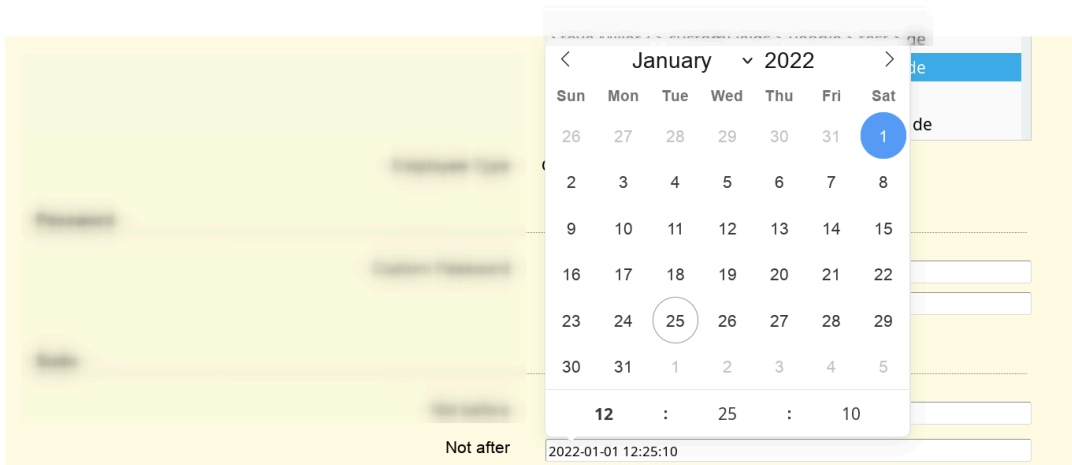
LAM can convert the displayed value to the configured time zone of your server/self service profile. In this case, please activate "Display in local time".

sudoNotAfter ✖

Type	LDAP date and time
Label	Not after ?
Attribute name *	sudoNotAfter ?
Help text	? ?
Required	<input type="checkbox"/> ?
Allow multiple values	<input type="checkbox"/>
Format	Y-m-d H:i:s ?
Validation message	? ?
Display in local time	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ?

Presentation:

LAM will display a calendar to select the date and time.



Constant value

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

This will set the attribute to a constant value. You can also specify wildcards to inject other attribute's values.

employeeType ✘

	Type	Constant	
Label		<input type="text" value="Employee Type"/>	?
Attribute name *		<input type="text" value="employeeType"/>	?
Help text		<input type="text" value="help test"/>	?
Value *		<input type="text" value="!!cn!!"/>	?

Wildcards:

- %attribute%: attribute value
- @attribute@: first character of attribute
- ?attribute?: first character of attribute in lower case
- !attribute!: first character of attribute in upper case
- ??attribute??: attribute in lower case
- !!attribute!!: attribute in upper case
- ((attribute)): space if attribute is set
- \$attribute|\$; attribute values separated by ";" (you can set other separators if you want)

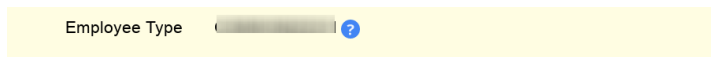
Examples for attributes gn="Steve", sn="Miller" and memberUid=("user1", "user2") (specified value -> resulting LDAP value):

Table 4.3.

Constant value	Resulting LDAP value
my constant	my constant
%gn%	Steve
%gn%((gn)%sn%	Steve Miller (would be "Miller" if gn is empty)
\$memberUid , \$	user1, user2

Presentation:

The LDAP value will be shown as text.



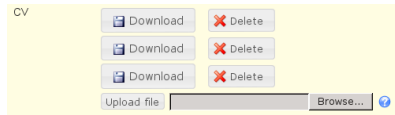
File upload:

This is used for binary data. You can restrict uploaded data to a given file extension and set the maximum file size.

Name	cv	✘	🔄
Type	File upload		
Label	<input type="text" value="CV"/>		?
Attribute name *	<input type="text" value="userCV"/>		?
Read-only	<input type="checkbox"/>		?
File extension	<input type="text" value=".pdf"/>		?
Maximum file size	<input type="text" value="100000"/>		?
Multi value	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		?

Presentation:

The uploaded data may also be downloaded via LAM.



Validation expressions:

The validation expressions follow the standard of Perl regular expressions [<http://perldoc.perl.org/perlre.html>]. They start and end with a "/". The beginning of a line is specified by "^" and the end by "\$".

Examples:

`/^[a-z0-9]+$/` allows small letters and numbers. The value must not be empty ("").

`/^[a-z0-9]+$/i` allows small and capital letters ("i" at the end means ignore case) and numbers. The value must not be empty ("").

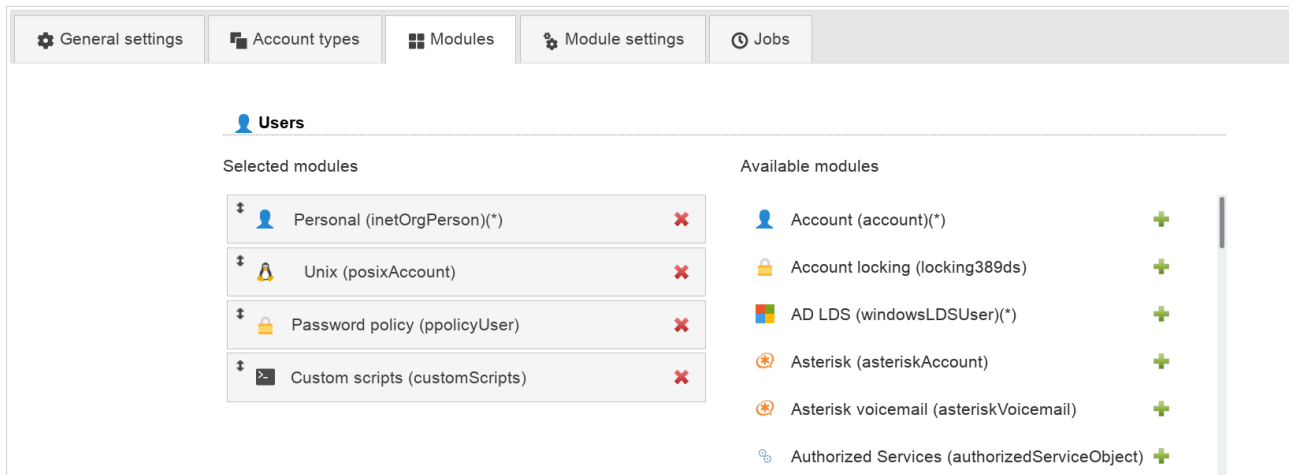
Special characters that must be escaped with "\": "\", ".", "(", ")"

E.g. `/^[a-z0-9\.\,]$/i`

Custom scripts (LAM Pro)

LAM Pro allows you to execute scripts whenever an account is created, modified or deleted. This can be useful to automate processes which needed manual work afterwards (e.g. sending your user a welcome mail or register a mailbox). Additionally, you can specify manual scripts that can be executed from within LAM Pro.

To activate this feature please add the "Custom scripts" module to all needed account types on the configuration pages.



In "Module settings" you can specify multiple scripts for each action type (e.g. modify) and account type (e.g. user). The scripts need to be located on the filesystem of your webserver and will be executed in its user environment. E.g. if your webserver runs as user www-data with the group www-data then the custom scripts will be run under this user with his rights. The output of the scripts will be shown in LAM.

You can specify the scripts on the LAM configuration pages.

 Custom scripts

Custom scripts

```
user preModify /opt/myapp/myscript -u $uid$ -d $dn$
group postDelete /opt/myapp/myscript2 -g $gid$ -d $dn$
user manual /opt/myapp/myscript3 -u $uid$ -d $dn$
user manual LAMLABEL="Run my script" /opt/myapp/myscript4|-u $uid$ -d $dn$
```

Output may contain HTML ?

Hide command in messages ?

Hide tab ?

Syntax:

Please enter one script per line. Each line has the following format: <account type> <action> <script>

E.g.: user preModify /usr/bin/myCustomScript -u \$uid\$

Account types:

You can setup scripts for all available account types (e.g. user, group, host, ...). Please see the help on the configuration page about your current active account types.

Actions:

Table 4.4. Action types

Action name	Description
preCreate	Executed before creating a new account (cancels operation if a script returns an exit code > 0, not available for file upload)
postCreate	Executed after creating a new account (does not run if preCreate or LDAP operations fail)
preModify	Executed before an account is modified (cancels operation if a script returns an exit code > 0)
postModify	Executed after an account was modified (does not run if preModify or LDAP operations fail)
preDelete	Executed before an account is modified (cancels operation if a script returns an exit code > 0)
postDelete	Executed after an account was modified (does not run if preDelete or LDAP operations fail)
manual	Can be run manually on account page. If you add LAM-LABEL="text" before the command then LAM will use the text as label for the button in account edit screen.

Script:

You can execute any script which is located on the filesystem of your webserver. The path may be absolute or relative to the PATH-variable of the environment of your webserver process. It is also possible to add commandline arguments to your scripts. Additionally, LAM will resolve wildcards to LDAP attributes. If your script includes an wildcard in the format \$ATTRIBUTE\$ then LAM will replace it with the attribute value of the current LDAP entry. The values of multi-value attributes are separated by commas. E.g. if you create an account with the attribute "uid" and value "steve" then LAM will resolve "\$uid\$" to "steve".

Please note that manual scripts can only use the current LDAP attribute values of the account. Any modifications done that are not saved will not be available. Manual scripts are also not available for new accounts that are not yet saved to LDAP.

You can switch LAM's logging to debug mode if you are unsure which attributes with which values are available.

The following special wildcards are available for automatic scripts:

- **\$INFO.lamLoginDn\$**: the DN of the user that is logged in to LAM.
- **\$INFO.debug\$**: list of all possible wildcards and their values (e.g. "\$objectClass\$:posixAccount,inetOrgPerson; \$loginShell\$:/bin/bash; \$gidNumber\$:12345; \$uid\$:userid...")
- **\$INFO.userPasswordClearText\$**: cleartext password when Unix/Windows password is changed (e.g. useful for external password synchronisation) for new/modified accounts
- **\$INFO.userPasswordStatusChange\$**: provides additional information if the Personal/Unix password locking status was changed, possible values: locked, unlocked, unchanged
- **\$INFO.passwordSelfResetAnswerClearText\$**: cleartext answer to security question
- **\$INFO.389lockingStatusChange\$**: for 389ds account locking, provides information if account was unlocked. Possible values: unchanged, unlocked
- **\$INFO.389deactivationStatusChange\$**: for 389ds account locking, provides information if account was deactivated. Possible values: unchanged, activated, deactivated
- **\$INFO.isNewAccount\$**: specifies if the account already exists or is newly created (yes|no)
- **\$INFO.passwordUpdated\$**: specifies if the user password was changed (yes|no)
- **\$INFO.passwordChangeType\$**: password type (manual|random|none) where "none" means no password change
- **\$INFO.passwordChangeModules\$**: module names of password change operation (e.g. "posixAccount")
- **\$INFO.forcePasswordChange\$**: a password change was forced (yes|no)
- **\$INFO.sendPasswordViaEmail\$**: send password via email (yes|no)
- **\$INFO.sendPasswordAlternateAddress\$**: alternate email address for password email if set (e.g. "test@example.com")
- **\$NEW.<attribute>\$**: the value of a new attribute (e.g. \$NEW.telephoneNumber\$) for modified accounts
- **\$DEL.<attribute>\$**: the value of a deleted attribute (e.g. \$DEL.telephoneNumber\$) for modified accounts
- **\$MOD.<attribute>\$**: the new value of a modified attribute (e.g. \$MOD.telephoneNumber\$) for modified accounts
- **\$ORIG.<attribute>\$**: the original value of an attribute (e.g. \$ORIG.telephoneNumber\$) for modified accounts

Output may contain HTML: If your scripts generate HTML output then activate this option.

Hide command in messages: You may want to prevent that your users see the executed commands. In this case activating this option will only show the command output but not the command itself.

You can see a preview of the commands which will be automatically executed on the "Custom scripts" tab. Here you can also run the manual scripts.

Managing entries in your LDAP directory

Claudia Bach claudia.bach@ldap-account-manager.org Telephone number 0123-4567-8900 Mobile number 0123-4567-8922

Suffix: demo > People > test > de RDN identifier: uid

Manual scripts

/opt/myapp/myscript3 -u 'cbach' -d 'uid=cbach,ou=demo,ou=People,o=test,c=de'

Automatic scripts

Action type	Command
preModify	/opt/myapp/myscript -u \$uid\$ -d \$dn\$

Sudo roles (LAM Pro)

You can manage your sudo roles in LDAP if you have installed the sudo-ldap package or compiled sudo with LDAP support [http://www.sudo.ws/sudo/readme_ldap.html].

To activate sudo management in LAM Pro edit your server profile and add the type "Sudo roles".

Samba domains Samba 3 domain entries +

Sudo roles Sudo role management +

Users User accounts (e.g. Unix, Samba and Kolab) +

Sudo roles

Selected modules: Sudo role (sudoRole)*

Available modules:

- Auto delete (autoDelete) +
- Custom fields (customFields) +
- Custom scripts (customScripts) +
- General information (generalInformation) +

Now you can create sudo commands.

backupRootFileSystem
Backup script

Suffix
sudoRoles
RDN identifier
cn ?

> Sudo role

Role name *	<input type="text" value="backupRootFileSystem"/>
Description	<input type="text" value="Backup script"/>
Users	<input type="text" value="user1"/> ✖ + ? <input type="text" value="user2"/> ✖
Hosts	<input type="text" value="host1"/> ✖ + ? <input type="text" value="host2"/> ✖
Commands	<input type="text" value="/etc/init.d/apache restart"/> ✖ + ? <input type="text" value="/etc/init.d/exim restart"/> ✖
Run users	<input type="text" value="root"/> ✖ + ? <input type="text" value="www-data"/> ✖
Run groups	<input type="text" value="group1"/> ✖ + ? <input type="text" value="group2"/> ✖
Options	<input type="text" value="!authenticate"/> ✖ + ? <input type="text" value="setenv"/> ✖
Not before	<input type="text"/>
Not after	<input type="text"/>
Order	<input type="text"/>

The sudo roles in LDAP work similar to those in /etc/sudoers. You can specify who may run which commands as which user. It is also possible to specify options like NOPASSWD.

LDAP views based on nsview (LAM Pro)

LAM Pro supports LDAP views based on the "nsview" object class. These views allow to create an organizational unit that shows a subset of your LDAP content. The subset is determined by an LDAP filter.

Configuration:

To activate view management in LAM Pro edit your server profile and add the type "LDAP views".

Views
LDAP views based on nsview
+

+ ? View (nsview)(*) ✖

✖	Auto delete (autoDelete)	+
🔗	Custom fields (customFields)	+
📄	Custom scripts (customScripts)	+
ℹ️	General information (generalInformation)	+

Now you are ready to create your views. Each view has a name, LDAP filter and an optional description.

Views

New view File upload Delete selected views dirsrv > de

View count: 3

Actions	Name	Filter	Description
Sort sequence Filter			
<input type="checkbox"/>	barcelona	(l=Barcelona)	Employees based in Barcelona
<input type="checkbox"/>	munich	(l=Munich)	Employees based in Munich
<input type="checkbox"/>	tokyo	(l=Tokyo)	Employees based in Tokyo

munich Employees based in Munich

Suffix views RDN identifier ou ?

View

Name *

Filter *

Description

Apache Guacamole (LAM Pro)

Apache Guacamole offers remote desktop connections based on RDP/VNC.

Configuration

Please create a new group or group of names type on tab "Account types".

General settings Account types Modules Module settings Jobs

Available account types

- Aliases Alias entries +
- Asterisk extensions Asterisk extensions entries +
- Automount entries Automount entries +
- Billing codes PyKota billing codes +
- Bind DNS Bind DNS entries +
- Custom type Custom entries +
- DHCP DHCP administration +
- Groups Group accounts (e.g. Unix and Samba) +
- Groups of names Group of names accounts +

Then add the Guacamole module on tab "Modules".

Apache Guacamole

Selected modules

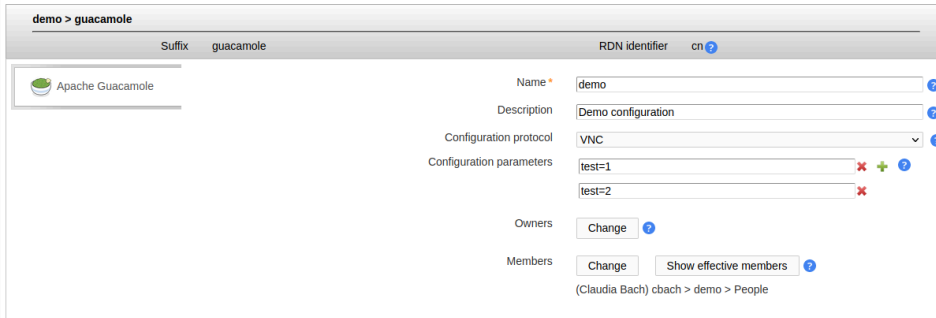
- Apache Guacamole (guacamole)*

Available modules

- Auto delete (autoDelete) +
- Custom fields (customFields) +
- Custom scripts (customScripts) +
- General information (generalInformation) +
- Group of members (groupOfMembers)* +
- Group of names (groupOfNames)* +

Now you can manage the Guacamole entries with protocol and parameters.

Managing entries in your LDAP directory



Auto delete (LAM Pro)

This module allows to mark any new entry to be marked for auto deletion. The cleanup is done by the LDAP server itself. Please note that this will not delete any relations etc. in other entries (e.g. group memberships).

Requirements

- LDAP server with DDS (Dynamic Directory Services) support: your LDAP server needs to be configured to allow auto deletion of entries. See e.g. OpenLDAP configuration [<http://www.openldap.org/doc/admin24/overlays.html>].
- Your user has the right to set a deletion date. This is configured on your LDAP server via ACLs. E.g. OpenLDAP requires manage rights to attribute "entryTtl".

Restrictions

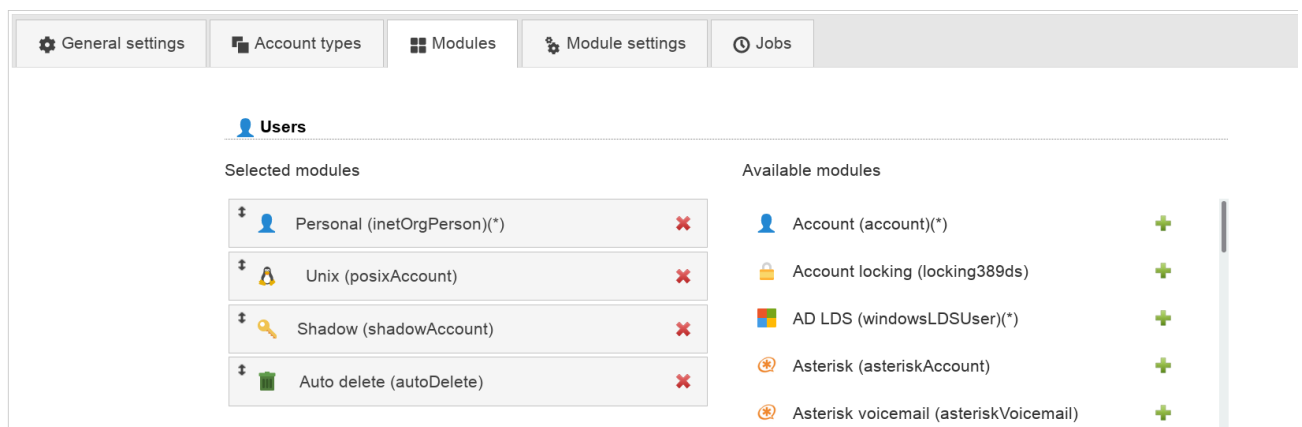
The maximum time for auto deletion is one year and six days. This is a restriction by the DDS standard itself. The deletion date can be extended for existing accounts but always by a maximum of one year and six days.

You should configure the maximum TTL value on your LDAP server as default is often much less than a year.

A deletion date on an existing entry cannot be removed but only be extended.

Configuration

You can add the auto delete module to any account type.



Usage

You can set a deletion time for any new account. Please note the restrictions above. If you get an error about invalid TTL then you might have exceeded the maximum TTL.

Existing accounts cannot be marked for deletion. But you may update the deletion date on existing accounts that are already marked for deletion.

Profile editor can be used to setup a default deletion time.

New user

Suffix: demo > People > test > de RDN identifier: cn

Deletion time: 2023-02-02 16:00:51 [Change](#) [?](#)

Personal
Unix
Shadow
Auto delete

General information

This module is available for all account types. It shows some internal information about the LDAP entries like the creation time and who modified the entry.

If you use the "memberOf" overlay in OpenLDAP then this will also show group memberships done by the overlay.

Claudia Bach claudia.bach@ldap-account-manager.org Telephone number 0123-4567-8900 Mobile number 0123-4567-8922

Suffix: demo > People > test > de RDN identifier: uid

Created by: admin > test > de
Creation time: 21.03.2007 18:03:30

Modified by: admin > test > de
Modification time: 02.02.2022 15:55:31

Has subentries: yes

Groups: 222-1 > asteriskExt > test > de
xx_4-1 > asteriskExt > test > de
[project1 > demo > gon > test > de](#)
base > gon > test > de
sub12 > gon > test > de
[demosub > demo > gon > test > de](#)
[demo > demo > gon > test > de](#)
xx_3-1 > asteriskExt > test > de
xx_3-2 > asteriskExt > test > de
xx_3-3 > asteriskExt > test > de
demo > gon > test > de
testers > gon > test > de
business > gon > test > de
[admins > demo > gon > test > de](#)

Personal
Unix
Shadow
General information

Chapter 5. Tools

Profile editor

The account profiles are templates for your accounts. Here you can specify default values which can then be loaded when you create accounts. You may also load a template for an existing account to reset it to default values. When you create a new account then LAM will always load the profile named **"default"**. This account profile can include default values for all your accounts.

Profile editor

Create a new profile

Groups

Manage existing profiles

 Groups	<input type="text" value="default"/>	<input type="button" value="edit"/> <input type="button" value="delete"/> <input type="button" value="copy"/> <input type="button" value="paste"/>
 Password policies	<input type="text" value="default"/>	<input type="button" value="edit"/> <input type="button" value="delete"/> <input type="button" value="copy"/> <input type="button" value="paste"/>
 Users	<input type="text" value="default"/>	<input type="button" value="edit"/> <input type="button" value="delete"/> <input type="button" value="copy"/> <input type="button" value="paste"/>

You can enter the LDAP suffix, RDN identifier and various other attributes depending on account type and activated modules.

Profile editor

General settings

Profile name *

LDAP suffix

RDN identifier

Personal

Initials

Description

Street

Post office box

Postal code

Location

State

Import/export:

Profiles can be exported to and imported from other server profiles.

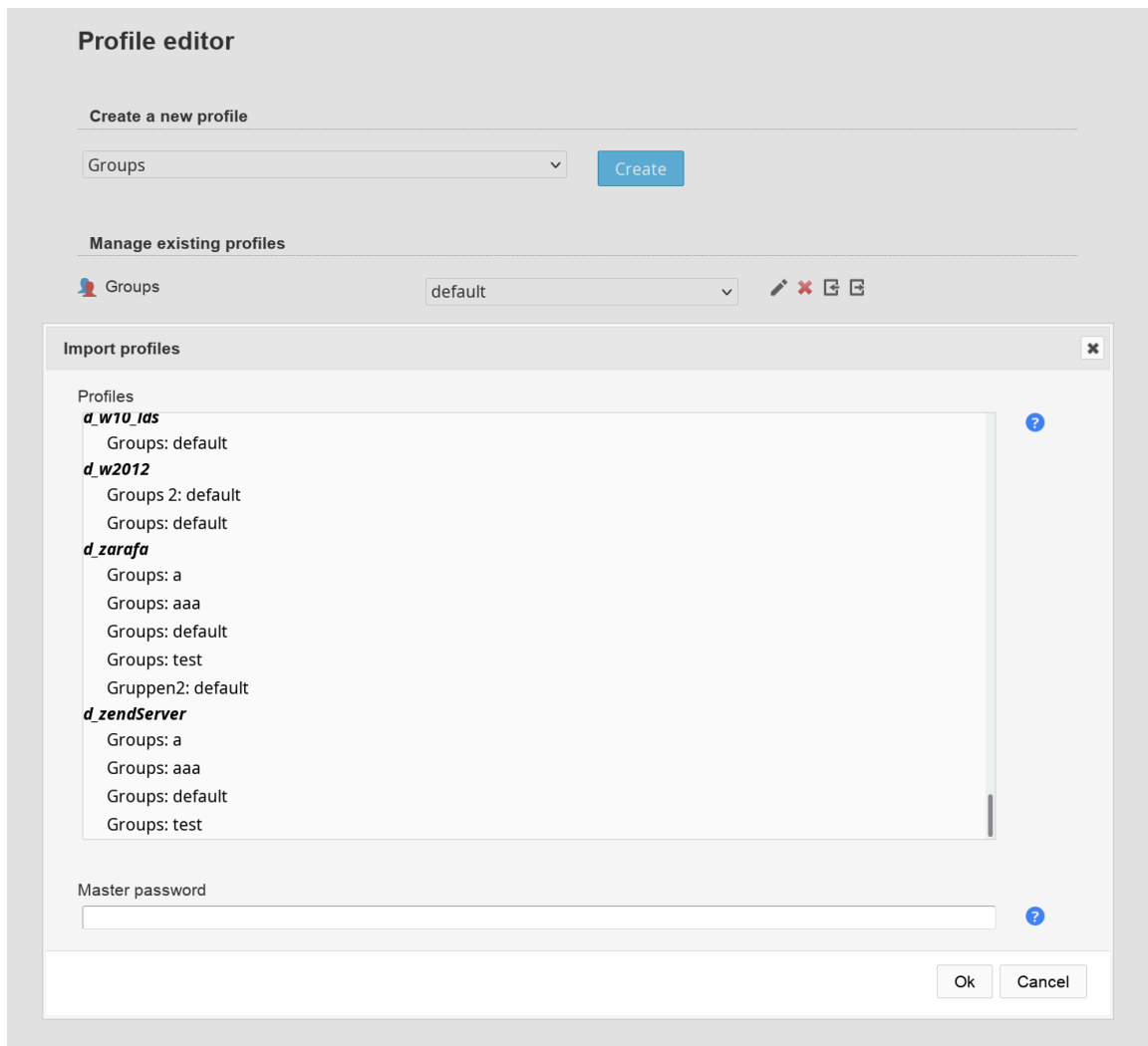
Profile editor

Create a new profile

Groups

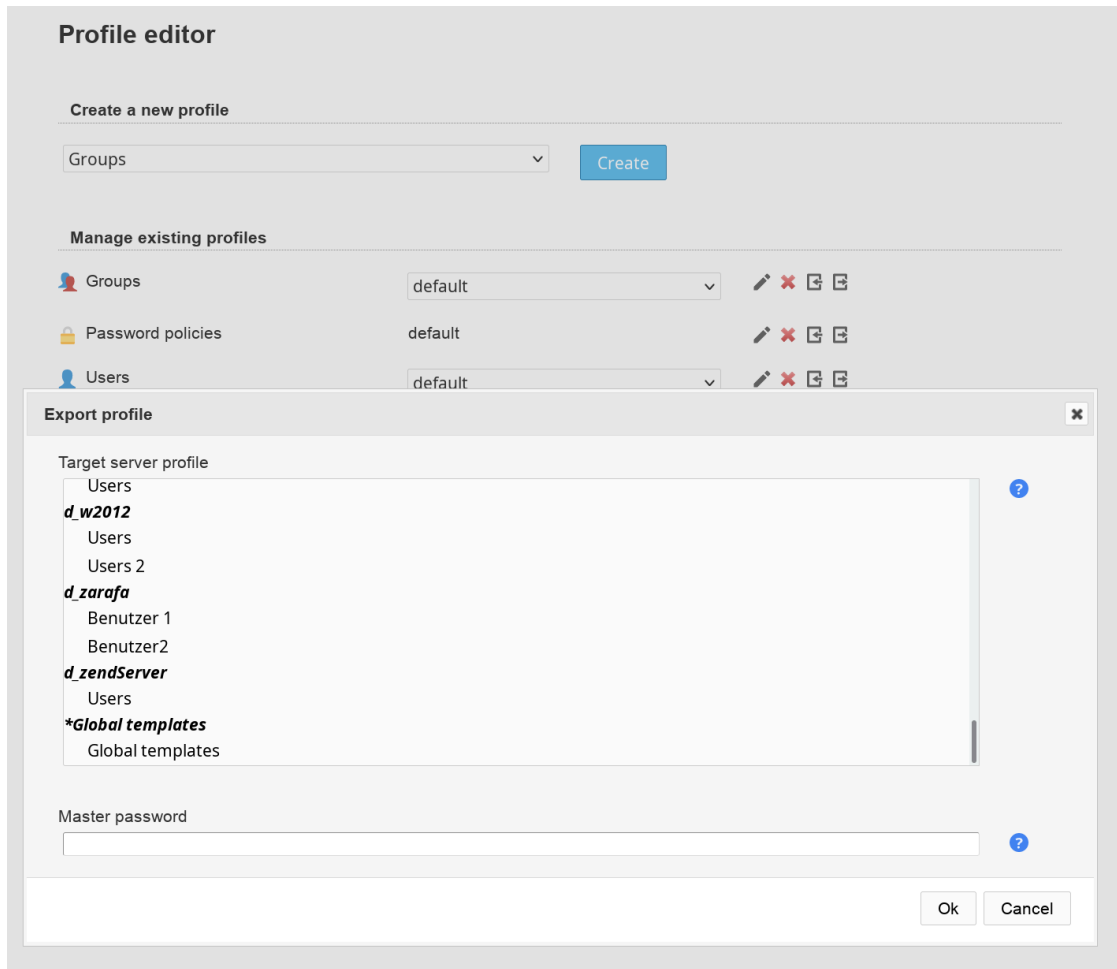
Manage existing profiles

 Groups	<input type="text" value="default"/>	   
 Password policies	<input type="text" value="default"/>	   
 Users	<input type="text" value="default"/>	   



There is a special export target called "*Global templates". All profiles exported here will be copied to all other server profiles (incl. new ones). But existing profiles with the same name are not overwritten. So a profile in global templates is treated as default profile for all server profiles.

Use this if you would like to setup default profiles that are valid for all server profiles.



PDF editor

All accounts in LAM may be exported as PDF files. You can specify the page structure and displayed information by editing the PDF profiles.

PDF editor

Create a new PDF structure

Groups

Manage existing PDF structures

Groups	<input type="text" value="default"/>	
Users	<input type="text" value="default"/>	

Manage logos

printLogo.jpg (240 x 255)

No file selected.

Global template logos

Delete printLogo.jpg
 Master password

When you export accounts to PDF then each account will get its own page inside the PDF. There is a headline on each page where you can show a page title. You may also add a logo to each page. To add more logos please use the logo management on the PDF editor main page.

PDF editor

Structure name *	<input type="text" value="default"/>
Headline	<input type="text" value="User information"/>
Logo	<input type="text" value="printLogo.jpg (240 x 255)"/>
Folding marks	<input type="text" value="No"/>

<input type="text" value="Personal user information"/>	
Personal: Job title	
Personal: First name	
Personal: Last name	
Personal: Street	
Personal: Postal code	
Personal: Postal address	
Personal: Email address	
Personal: Telephone number	
Personal: Mobile number	
Personal: Fax number	

The main part is structured into sections of information. Each section has a title. This can either be static text or the value of an attribute. You may also insert a static text block as section. Sections can be moved by using the arrows next to the section title.

Each section can contain multiple fields which usually represent LDAP attributes. You can simply add new fields by selecting the field name and its position. Then use the arrows to move the field inside the section.

Import/export:



PDF structures can be exported to and imported from other server profiles.

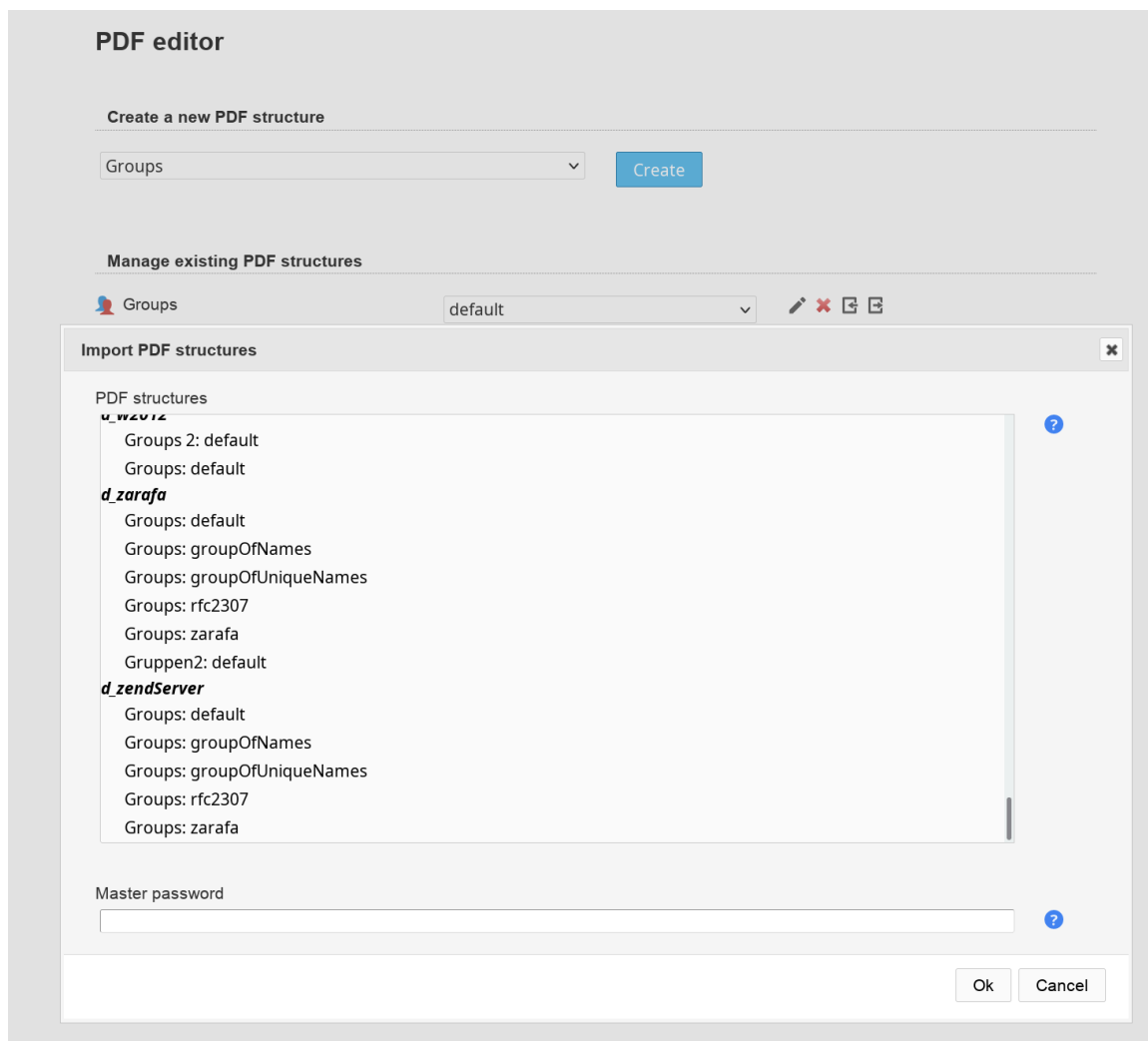
PDF editor

Create a new PDF structure

Groups

Manage existing PDF structures

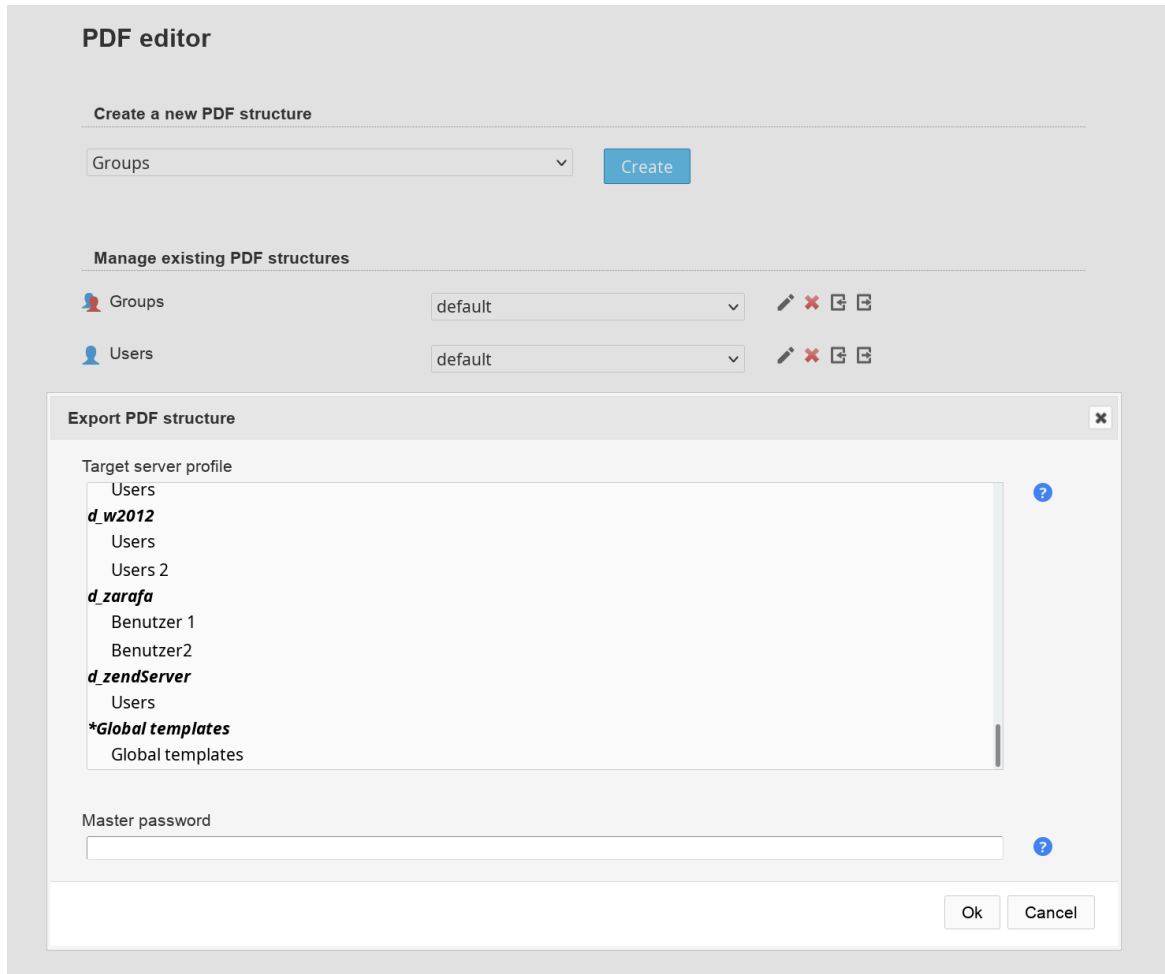
 Groups	<input type="text" value="default"/>				
 Users	<input type="text" value="default"/>				



The screenshot shows the PDF editor interface. At the top, there is a section for 'Create a new PDF structure' with a dropdown menu set to 'Groups' and a 'Create' button. Below this is a section for 'Manage existing PDF structures' with two rows: 'Groups' and 'Users', each with a 'default' dropdown and icons for edit, delete, import, and export. The 'import' and 'export' icons for both rows are highlighted with a red box. An 'Import PDF structures' dialog box is open in the foreground, displaying a list of PDF structures under three categories: 'u_wzlviz', 'd_zarafa', and 'd_zendServer'. Each category lists several sub-structures like 'Groups: default', 'Groups: groupOfNames', etc. There is a 'Master password' field at the bottom of the dialog and 'Ok' and 'Cancel' buttons.

There is a special export target called "***Global templates**". All PDF structures exported here will be copied to all other server profiles (incl. new ones). But existing PDF structures with the same name are not overwritten. So a PDF structure in global templates is treated as default structure for all server profiles.




Use this if you would like to setup default PDF structures that are valid for all server profiles.



Logo management:

You can upload image files to put a custom logo on the PDF files. The image file name must end with .png or .jpg.

Manage logos

printLogo.jpg (240 x 255)   

No file selected.

File upload

When you need to create lots of accounts then you can use LAM's file upload to create them. In contrast to LDAP import/export this operates on account type level.

LAM will read a CSV formatted file and create the related LDAP entries. Please check the data in you CSV file carefully. LAM will do less checks for the file upload than for single account creation.

At the first page please select the account type and what extensions should be activated.

Account creation via file upload

Here you can create multiple accounts by providing a CSV file.

Account type

Selected modules

Personal Unix Password policy

Custom scripts

The next page shows all available options for the file upload. You will also find a sample CSV file which can be used as template for your CSV file. All red options are required columns in the file. You need to specify a value for each account.

When you upload the CSV file then LAM first does some checks on this file. This includes syntax checks and if all required data was entered. No changes in the LDAP directory are done at this time.

If the checks were successful then LAM will ask again if you want to create the accounts. You will also have the chance to check the upload by viewing the changes in LDIF format.

File upload

Please provide a CSV formatted file with your account data. The cells in the first row must be filled with the column identifiers. The following rows represent one account for each row. Check your input carefully. LAM will only do some basic checks on the upload data.

Hint: Format all cells as text in your spreadsheet program and turn off auto correction.

Download sample CSV file 

CSV file No file selected.



Create PDF files

PDF structure default






Font DejaVu

Columns

DN settings

Name	Identifier	Example value	Default value	Possible values
 DN suffix	dn_suffix	ou=demo,ou=People,o=test,c=de	ou=demo,ou=People,o=test,c=de	
 RDN identifier*	dn_rdn	uid		uid, cn
 Overwrite	overwrite	false	false	true, false

Personal

Name	Identifier	Example value	Default value	Possible values
 First name	inetOrgPerson_firstName	Steve		
 Last name*	inetOrgPerson_lastName	Miller		
 Initials	inetOrgPerson_initials	A.B.		
 Description	inetOrgPerson_description	Temp, contract till December		
 Job title	inetOrgPerson_title	President		

Multi edit

This tool allows you to modify a large list of LDAP entries in batch mode. You can add new attributes/object classes, remove attributes and set attributes to a specific value.

At the beginning, you need to specify where the entries are stored that should be changed. You can select an account suffix, the tree suffix or enter your own DN by selecting "Other".

Next, enter an additional LDAP filter to limit the entries that should be changed. E.g. use "(objectclass=inetOrgPerson)" to filter for users. You may also enter e.g. "!(objectClass=passwordSelfReset)" to match all accounts that do not yet have the password self reset feature.

Now, it is time to define the changes that should be done. The following operations are possible:

- **Add:** Adds an attribute value if not yet existing. Please do not use for single-value attributes that already have a value.
- **Modify:** Sets an attribute to the given value. If the attribute does not yet exist then it is added. If the attribute has multiple values then all other values are removed.
- **Delete:** Deletes the specified value from this attribute. If you leave the value field blank then all attribute values are removed.

Please note that all actions are run as separate LDAP commands. You cannot add an object class and a required attribute at the same time.

You can use the following wildcards to use existing attribute data of the entries:

- %attribute%: attribute value
- @attribute@: first character of attribute
- ?attribute?: first character of attribute in lower case
- !attribute!: first character of attribute in upper case
- ??attribute??: attribute in lower case
- !!attribute!!: attribute in upper case
- ((attribute)): space if attribute is set
- §attribute|§; attribute values separated by ";" (you can set other separators if you want)

Examples for attributes `gn="Steve"`, `sn="Miller"` and `memberUid=("user1", "user2")` (specified value -> resulting LDAP value):

Table 5.1.

Value	Resulting LDAP value
my value	my value
%gn%	Steve
%gn%((gn))%sn%	Steve Miller (would be "Miller" if gn is empty)
§memberUid , §	user1, user2

Multi edit

LDAP suffix ?

LDAP filter ?

Operations ?

Type	Attribute name	Value
Add	street	My Street 123
Add	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
Add	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

Dry run

You should always start with a dry run. It will not do any changes to your LDAP directory but print out all modifications that will be done. You will also be able to download the changes in LDIF format to use with `ldapmodify`. This is useful if you want to adjust some actions manually.

Progress

Dry run finished.

LDIF file

[ldif953431121372.ldif](#)

Log output

```
uid=shuber,ou=demo,ou=People,o=test,c=de
+street=My Street 123

uid=thouser,ou=demo,ou=People,o=test,c=de
+street=My Street 123
```

Apply changes

This will run the actions against your LDAP directory. You will see which accounts are edited in the progress area and also if any errors occurred.

Progress

uid=shuber,ou=demo,ou=People,o=test,c=de

Finished all operations.

LDAP import/export

Here you can import and export plain LDAP data. In contrast to file upload this operates on plain LDAP attribute level.

Import

The LDAP import supports input data in LDIF [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/LDAP_Data_Interchange_Format] format. You can provide plain text or upload an LDIF file.

The "Don't stop on errors" option will cause the import to continue even if entries could not be created.

Export

Here you can export your plain LDAP data as LDIF or CSV file.

Base DN: this is the starting point of the export. Enter a DN or press the magnifying glass icon to open the DN selection dialog.

Search scope: You can export just the base DN, base DN + its direct children or the whole subtree.

Search filter: this can be used to filter the entries by specifying a standard LDAP filter. The preselected filter "(objectclass=*)" matches all entries.

Attributes: the list of attributes that should be part of export. "*" matches all standard attributes (excluding system attributes).

Include system attributes: this will also include system attributes like the entry creation time and creator's DN.

Save as file: will save to file instead of printing the data on the web page.

Export format: you can select LDIF or CSV (e.g. for usage in spreadsheet applications).

End of line: use the one appropriate for your operating system.

OU editor

This is a simple editor to add/delete organisational units in your LDAP tree. This way you can structure the accounts.

OU editor

New organisational unit

Parent DN ?

Name

Delete organisational unit

Organisational unit ?

Tree view

The tree view provides a raw view on your LDAP directory. This feature is for people who are experienced with LDAP and need special functionality which the LAM account modules not provide. E.g. if you want to add a special object class to an account or edit attributes ignoring LAM's syntax checks.

To use this tool you will need to configure its suffix in your LAM server profile on first tab. You can also specify multiple suffixes separated by semicolon.

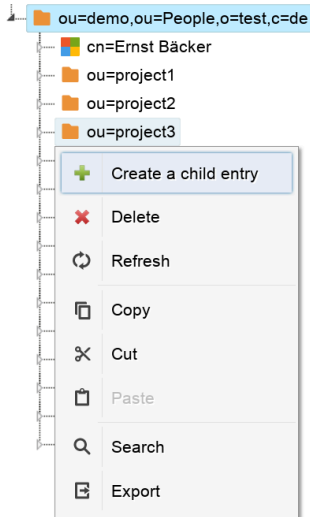
Tool settings

Hidden tools

Server information	<input type="checkbox"/>	File upload	<input type="checkbox"/>	Multi edit	<input type="checkbox"/>
PDF editor	<input type="checkbox"/>	OU editor	<input type="checkbox"/>	Profile editor	<input type="checkbox"/>
LDAP import/export	<input type="checkbox"/>	WebAuthn devices	<input type="checkbox"/>	Tree view	<input type="checkbox"/>
Tests	<input type="checkbox"/>	Schema browser	<input type="checkbox"/>		

Tree view

Tree suffix ?



ou=demo,ou=People,o=test,c=de

Attributes

objectClass * + -
 ou * + -

Add new attribute

Attribute

Internal attributes

[Show internal attributes](#)

Schema browser

Here you browse the schema of your LDAP server. You can view what object classes, attributes, syntaxes and matching rules are available. This is useful if you need to check if a certain object class is available.

Schema browser

Object
classes

Attribute
types

Syntaxes

Matching
rules

Jump to an object class

inetorgperson

OID	2.16.840.1.113730.3.2.2
Description	RFC2798: Internet Organizational Person
Type	structural
Inherits from	organizationalPerson
Optional attributes	audio businessCategory carLicense departmentNumber displayName employeeNumber employeeType givenName homePhone homePostalAddress initials jpegPhoto

Server information

This shows information and statistics about your LDAP server. This includes the suffixes, used overlays, connection data and operation statistics. You will need "cn=monitor" setup to see all details. Some data may not be available depending on your LDAP server software.

Please see the following links how to setup "cn=monitor":

- OpenLDAP [<http://www.openldap.org/doc/admin24/monitoringslapd.html>]

- 389 server [http://directory.fedoraproject.org/wiki/Howto:CN%3DMonitor_LDAP_Monitoring]

Server information

Managed suffixes	o=test,c=de
LDAP version	3
Config suffix	cn=config
Schema suffix	cn=Subschema
Dynamic subtrees	o=test,c=de
SASL mechanisms	DIGEST-MD5, NTLM, CRAM-MD5
Name	OpenLDAP: slapd 2.4.57+dfsg-3 (May 15 2021 23:03:34)
Listeners	IP=0.0.0.0:389, IP=[::]:389, IP=0.0.0.0:636, IP=[::]:636, PATH=/var/run/slapd/ldapi
Backends	config, ldif, bdb, monitor
Overlays	dynlist, unique, memberof, dds, ppolicy, glue
Max. file descriptors	1024

Server statistics

LDAP entries	4433
Referrals	0
Start time	04.03.2022 07:31:05
Server time	04.03.2022 08:02:37
Uptime	0:0:31

Connection statistics

Current connections	8
Total connections	1070
Bytes sent	2.01MB
PDU's sent	4680

Operation statistics

	Initiated	Completed
Bind	70	70
Unbind	62	62
Search	179	178
Add	0	0
Modify	0	0
Delete	0	0
Modify RDN	0	0
Compare	0	0
Abandon	0	0
Extended	0	0
Total	311	310

WebAuthn devices

See the WebAuthn/FIDO2 appendix for an overview about WebAuthn/FIDO2 in LAM.

Here you can manage your webauthn/FIDO2 devices.

You can register additional security devices and remove old ones. In addition, you can set a name for your devices. This helps if you need to remove a device at a later point.

If no more device is registered then LAM will ask you for registration on next login.

WebAuthn devices

[Register new device](#)

Name	Save	Registration	Last use	Delete
key 1		2022-01-15 10:59:01	2022-03-04 20:04:54	
key 2		2022-03-04 20:05:12	2022-03-04 20:05:12	
key 3		2022-03-04 20:05:21	2022-03-04 20:05:21	

Tests








This allows you to check if your LDAP schema is compatible with LAM and to find possible problems.

Lamdaemon test

LAM provides an external script to manage home directories and quotas. You can test here if everything is setup correctly.

If you get an error like "no tty present and no askpass program specified" then the path to the lamdaemon.pl may be wrong. Please see the lamdaemon installation instructions for setup details.

Lamdaemon test

LOCAL (localhost)		
Lamdaemon server and path		Using localhost as lamdaemon remote server.
SSH connection		SSH connection established.
Execute lamdaemon		Lamdaemon successfully run.
Lamdaemon version		Lamdaemon successfully run.
Lamdaemon: check NSS LDAP		Lamdaemon successfully run.
Lamdaemon: Quota module installed		Lamdaemon successfully run.
Lamdaemon: read quotas		Lamdaemon successfully run.
Lamdaemon test finished.		

Schema test

This will test if your LDAP schema supports all object classes and attributes of the active LAM modules. If you get a message that something is missing please check that you installed all required schemas.

If you get error messages about object class violations then this test can tell you what is missing.

Schema test

Users

Personal	✓	No problems found.
Unix	✓	No problems found.
Shadow	✓	No problems found.
Password policy	✓	No problems found.

Groups

Unix	✓	No problems found.
------	---	--------------------

Password policies

Password policy	✓	No problems found.
-----------------	---	--------------------

Chapter 6. Access levels and password reset page (LAM Pro)

You can define different access levels for each profile to allow or disallow write access. The password reset page helps your desktside support staff to reset user passwords.

Access levels

There are three access levels:

- **Write access (default)**

There are no restrictions. LAM admin users can manage account, create profiles and set passwords.

- **Change passwords**

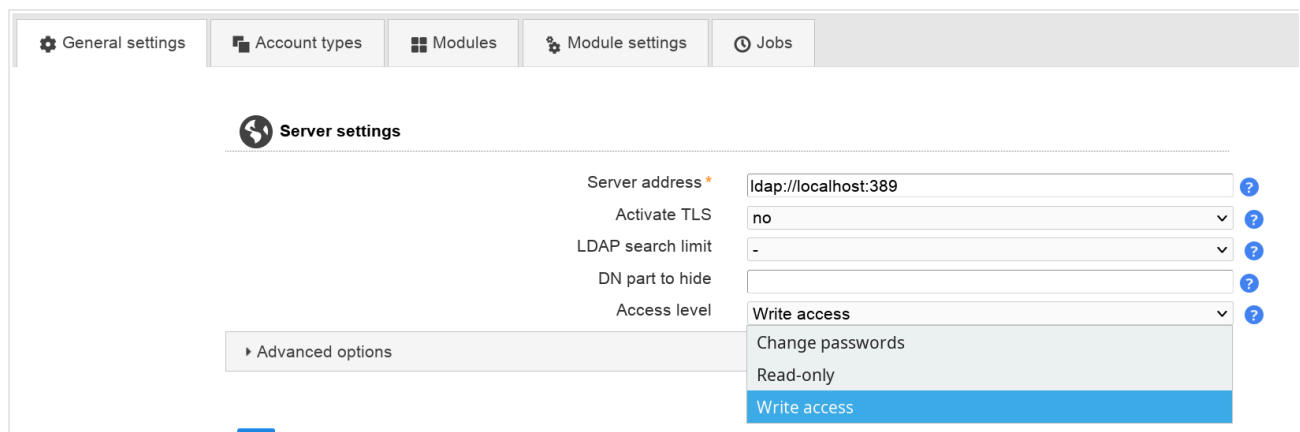
Similar to "Read only" except that the password reset page is available.

- **Read only**

No write access to the LDAP database is allowed. It is also impossible to manage account and PDF profiles.

Accounts may be viewed but no changes can be saved.

The access level can be set on the server configuration page:



Password reset page

This special page allows your desktside support staff to reset the Unix and Samba passwords of your users. Account may also be (un)locked If you set the access level to "Change passwords" then LAM will not allow any changes to the LDAP database except password changes via this page. The account pages will be still available in read-only mode.

You can open the password reset page by clicking on the key symbol on each user account:

Users

[New user](#) [File upload](#) [Delete selected users](#)

User count: 12

Actions	User name	First name
Sort sequence		
<input type="checkbox"/> Filter ▾	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	cbach	Claudia
<input type="checkbox"/>	ebaecker	Ernst
<input type="checkbox"/>	fhuber	Franz
<input type="checkbox"/>	hmeier	Helmut
<input type="checkbox"/>	hschuster	Heinz
<input type="checkbox"/>	kmontag	Kerstin
<input type="checkbox"/>	mfischer	Monika
<input type="checkbox"/>	rmontag	Ramona
<input type="checkbox"/>	shuber	Sepp
<input type="checkbox"/>	smiller	Steve
<input type="checkbox"/>	thausser	Thomas
<input type="checkbox"/>	xmontag	Xaver

There are three different options to set a new password. You can further restrict these options in server profile settings.

- **set random password and display it on screen**

This will set the user's password to a random value. The password will be 11 characters long with a random combination of letters, digits and "-_".

You may want to use this method to tell users their new passwords via phone.

- **set random password and mail it to user**

If the user account has set the mail attribute then LAM can send your user a mail with the new password. You can change the mail template to fit your needs. Please configure your LAM server profile to setup the sender address, subject and mail body. See here for setting up your SMTP server.

Using this method will prevent that your support staff knows the new password.

- **set specific password**

Here you can specify your own password.

Change password

Account details

Full name Claudia Bach
Email address claudia.bach@ldap-account-manager.org
Telephone number 0123-4567-8900
User name cbach

Password change options

Change Unix password
Force Unix password change

Generate random password

This will set a random password and display it on the screen or send it to the user via mail.

Display on screen [?](#)
 Send via mail
 Both

Alternate address

[?](#)

Set specific password

Here you can specify the new password yourself.

Password

Repeat password

Send via mail

LAM will display contact information about the user like the user's name, email address and telephone number. This will help your desktide support to easily contact your users.

Options:

Depending on the account there may be additional options available.

- **Sync Samba NT/LM password with Unix password:** If a user account has Samba passwords set then LAM will offer to synchronize the passwords.
- **Unlock Samba account:** Locked Samba accounts can be unlocked with the password change.
- **Update Samba password timestamps:** This will set the timestamps when the password was changed (sambaPwdLastSet). Only existing attributes are updated. No new attributes are added.
- **Sync Kerberos password with Unix password:** This will also update the Heimdal Kerberos password.
- **Sync Asterisk (voicemail) password with Unix password:** Changes also the Asterisk passwords.
- **Force password change:** This will force the user to change his password at next login. This option supports Shadow, Samba 3 and PPolicy (automatically detected).

Account (un)locking:

Depending if the account includes a Unix/Samba extension and PPolicy is activated the page will show options to (un)lock the account. E.g. if the account is fully unlocked then there will be no unlocking options printed.

Lock account

Samba

Lock account

Chapter 7. Self service (LAM Pro)

Preparations

OpenLDAP ACLs

By default only a few administrative users have write access to the LDAP database. Before your users may change their settings you must allow them to change their LDAP data.

Hint: The ACLs below are not required if you decide to run all operations as the LDAP bind user (option "Use for all operations").

This can be done by adding ACLs to your slapd.conf or slapd.d/cn=config/olcDatabase={1}bdb.ldif which look similar to these:

access to

attrs=userPassword

by self write

by anonymous auth

by * none

access to

attrs=mail,sn,givenName,telephoneNumber,mobile,facsimileTelephoneNumber,street,postalAddress,postOfficeBox,postalCode,roomNumber,shadowLastChange,passwordSelfResetAnswer,passwordSelfResetQuestion,passwordSelfResetBackupMail

by self write

by * read

If you do not want them to change all attributes then reduce the list to fit your needs. Some modules may require additional LDAP attributes. You can use the tree view to get the technical attribute names e.g. by selecting an user account.

Usually, the slapd.conf file is located in /etc/ldap or /etc/openldap.

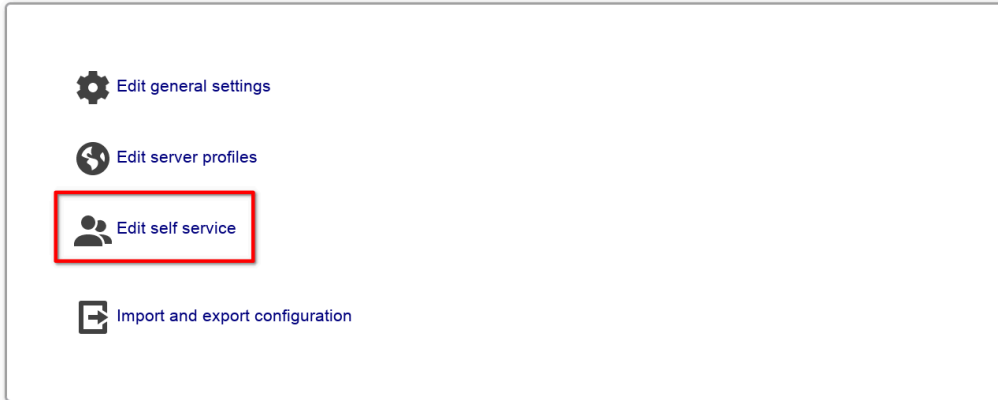
Other LDAP servers

There exist many LDAP implementations. If you do not use OpenLDAP you need to write your own ACLs. Please check the manual of your LDAP server for instructions.

Creating a self service profile

A self service profile defines what input fields your users see and some other general settings like the login caption.

When you go to the LAM configuration page you will see the self service link at the bottom. This will lead you to the self service configuration pages



Now we need to create a new self service profile. Click on the link to manage the self service profiles.

A screenshot of a dialog box titled 'Please enter your master configuration password to change the self service profile:'. It contains a 'Profile name' dropdown menu with 'd_demo' selected, a 'Password' text input field, and a blue 'Ok' button. Below the dialog, a link 'Manage self service profiles' is highlighted with a red rectangular box.

Specify a name for the new profile and enter your master configuration password (default is "lam") to save the profile.

Profile management

Add profile

Profile name

Type Users

Rename profile

Profile name d_demo

New profile name

Delete profile

Profile name d_demo

Now go back to the profile login and enter your master configuration password to edit your new profile.

Edit your new profile

General settings

On top of the page you see the link to the user login page. Copy this link address and give it to your users.

Below the link you can specify several options.

Self service configuration editor

Link to self service login page for your users: [Self service login](#)

General settings
 Page layout
 Module settings

Server settings

Server address *

LDAP suffix *

Activate TLS

Follow referrals

LDAP search attribute

LDAP user

LDAP password

Use for all operations

Additional LDAP filter

Authentication method

Default language

Enforce language

Time zone

Base URL

2-factor authentication

Provider

Table 7.1. General options

Server address	The address of your LDAP server. For LDAP+SSL use "ldaps://myserver"
Activate TLS	Activates TLS encryption. Please note that this cannot be combined with LDAP+SSL ("ldaps://").
LDAP suffix	The part of the LDAP tree where LAM should search for users
LDAP search attribute	Here you can specify if your users can login with user name + password, email + password or other attributes.
Follow referrals	By default LAM will not follow LDAP referrals. This is ok for most installations. If you use LDAP referrals please activate the referral option in advanced settings.
LDAP user + password	The DN and password which is used to search for users in the LDAP database. It is sufficient if this DN has only read rights. If you leave these fields empty LAM will try to connect anonymously.
Use for all operations	By default LAM will use the credentials of the user that logged in to self service for read/modify operations. If you select this box then the connection user specified before will be used instead. Please note that this can be a security risk because the user requires write access to all users. You need to make sure that your LAM server is well protected.
Additional LDAP filter	Use this to enter an additional LDAP filter (e.g. "(objectClass=passwordSelfReset)") to reduce the number of accounts who may use self service.
Authentication method	The default method is user and password login. You can also enable HTTP authentication for your users. This way the web server is responsible to authenticate your users. LAM will use the given user name + password for the LDAP login. To setup HTTP authentication in Apache please see this link [http://httpd.apache.org/docs/2.2/howto/auth.html]. If you use Okta or OpenID for 2FA then you can also select to trust the 2FA provider. In this case the user does not need to enter any password in LAM itself (SSO).
Default language	This language is preselected on login.
Enforce language	Disables language selection and uses default language.
Time zone	Please provide your time zone.
Base URL	Please enter the base URL of your webserver (e.g. https://www.example.com). This is used to generate links in emails for password self reset and user self registration.
Login attribute label	This is the description for the LDAP search attribute. Set it to something which your users are familiar with.
Password field label	This text is placed as label for the password field on the login page. LAM will use "Password" if you do not enter any text.
Login caption	This text is displayed on the login page inside the login mask.

Login footer	This text is displayed on the login page below the login mask.
Main page caption	This text is displayed on the self service main page where your users change their data.
Main page footer	This text is displayed as footer on the self service main page where your users change their data.
Page header	This HTML code will be placed on top of all self service pages. E.g. you can use this to place your custom logo. Any HTML code is permitted.
Base color	Here you can change the background color for the user pages.
Additional CSS links	Here you can specify additional CSS links to change the layout of the self service pages. This is useful to adapt them to your corporate design. Please enter one link per line.

2-factor authentication

LAM supports 2-factor authentication for your users. This means the user will not only authenticate by user+password but also with e.g. a token generated by a mobile device. This adds more security because the token is generated on a physically separated device (typically mobile phone).

2-factor authentication

Provider	privacyIDEA	?
User name attribute	uid	?
Base URL *	https://myserver	?
Label		?
Optional	<input type="checkbox"/>	?
Disable certificate check	<input type="checkbox"/>	?
Caption		

The token is validated by a second application. LAM currently supports:

- privacyIdea [<https://www.privacyidea.org/>]
- YubiKey [<https://www.yubico.com/>]
- Duo [<https://duo.com/>]
- WebAuthn/FIDO2 [<https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/WebAuthn>]
- Okta [<https://www.okta.com/>]
- OpenID [<https://openid.net/>]

privacyIDEA

- Base URL: please enter the URL of your privacyIDEA instance
- User name attribute: please enter the LDAP attribute name that contains the user ID (e.g. "uid")
- Optional: By default LAM will enforce to use a token and reject users that did not setup one. You can set this check to optional. But if a user has setup a token then this will always be required.
- Disable certificate check: This should be used on development instances only. It skips the certificate check when connecting to verification server.

Please note that LAM needs to authenticate to privacyIdea with the user's user name and password WITHOUT second factor. This is needed to get the list of tokens that are setup for the user. You can setup a separate policy (scope: authentication) for LAM inside privacyIdea that has IP restriction ("Client" setting) to LAM's server IP and an action "otppin" "none".

YubiKey

- Base URLs: please enter the URL(s) of your YubiKey verification server(s). If you run a custom verification API such as yubiserver then enter its URL (e.g. <http://www.example.com:8000/wsapi/2.0/verify>). The URL needs to end with "/wsapi/2.0/verify". For YubiKey cloud these are "<https://api.yubico.com/wsapi/2.0/verify>", "<https://api2.yubico.com/wsapi/2.0/verify>", "<https://api3.yubico.com/wsapi/2.0/verify>", "<https://api4.yubico.com/wsapi/2.0/verify>" and "<https://api5.yubico.com/wsapi/2.0/verify>". Enter one URL per line.
- Client id: this is only required for YubiKey cloud. You can register here: <https://upgrade.yubico.com/getapikey/>
- Secret key: this is only required for YubiKey cloud. You can register here: <https://upgrade.yubico.com/getapikey/>
- Optional: By default LAM will enforce to use a token and reject users that did not setup one. You can set this check to optional. But if a user has setup a token then this will always be required.
- Disable certificate check: This should be used on development instances only. It skips the certificate check when connecting to verification server.

Duo

This requires to register a new "Web SDK" application in your Duo admin panel.

- User name attribute: please enter the LDAP attribute name that contains the user ID (e.g. "uid").
- Base URL: please enter the API-URL of your Duo instance (e.g. api-12345.duosecurity.com).
- Client id: please enter your client id.
- Secret key: please enter your client secret.

WebAuthn/FIDO2

See the WebAuthn/FIDO2 appendix for an overview about WebAuthn/FIDO2 in LAM.

Users will be asked to register a device during login if no device is setup.

- Domain: Please enter the WebAuthn domain. This is the public domain of the web server (e.g. "example.com"). Do not include protocol or port. Browsers will reject authentication if the domain does not match the web server domain.
- Optional: By default LAM will enforce to use a 2FA device and reject users that do not setup one. You can set this check to optional. But if a user has setup a device then this will always be required.

Okta

This requires to register a new application of type "Web".


There, you will need to configure LAM's 2-factor URLs as "Login redirect URIs" in the new application. They are "https://YOURDOMAIN/lam/templates/login2Factor.php" for admin interface and "https://YOUR-DOMAIN/lam/templates/selfService/selfService2Factor.php?scope=user&name=YOUR_PROFILE" for self service. You will get an error message during login with the URL to configure in case it was wrong.

On "Sign On" tab you need to add a rule that prompts for the factor.

LAM options:

- User name attribute: please enter the LDAP attribute name that contains the user ID (e.g. "mail").
- Base URL: please enter the URL of your Okta domain (e.g. https://mydomain.okta.com)
- Client id: please enter your application client id.
- Secret key: please enter your application secret key.

← Back to Applications

 LAM Active View Logs

General **Sign On** Assignments Okta API Scopes

Client Credentials

Client ID [redacted] Copy
Public identifier for the client that is required for all OAuth flows.

Client secret [redacted] Copy
Secret used by the client to exchange an authorization code for a token. This must be kept confidential! Do not include it in apps which cannot keep it secret, such as those running on a client.

General Settings

Okta domain [redacted] Copy

APPLICATION

Application label LAM

Application type Web

Allowed grant types

Client acting on behalf of itself

- Client Credentials

Client acting on behalf of a user

- Authorization Code
- Refresh Token
- Implicit (Hybrid)

LOGIN

Login redirect URIs [redacted]

OpenID

This will use an OpenID server as 2nd factor for authentication.

LAM options:

- User name attribute: please enter the LDAP attribute name that contains the user ID (e.g. "uid").
- Base URL: please enter the URL of your OpenID client URL. The URL is the one before the `"/.well-known/openid-configuration"`.
- Client id: please enter your application client id.
- Secret key: please enter your application secret key.

KeyCloack example configuration:

Create a new client, select "OpenID Connect" client type and enter a client ID.

The screenshot shows the 'General Settings' tab for a new client. The 'client type' dropdown is set to 'OpenID Connect'. The 'Client ID' field contains 'demo'. There are empty fields for 'Name' and 'Description'. The 'Always display in UI' toggle is currently turned off.

Now enable "Client authentication" and enter the valid redirect URLs in the last step.

The screenshot shows the 'Capability config' tab. 'Client authentication' is turned on. 'Authorization' is turned off. Under 'Authentication flow', 'Standard flow' and 'Direct access grants' are checked. Other options like 'Implicit flow', 'Service accounts roles', 'OAuth 2.0 Device Authorization Grant', and 'OIDC CIBA Grant' are unchecked.

They are `"https://YOURDOMAIN/lam/templates/login2Factor.php"` for admin interface and `"https://YOURDOMAIN/lam/templates/selfService/selfService2Factor.php"` for self service. You will get an error message during login in case it was wrong. Then save the configuration.

The screenshot shows the 'Login settings' tab. The 'Valid redirect URIs' field contains two entries: `https://YOURDOMAIN/lam/templates/login2Factor.php` and `https://YOURDOMAIN/lam/templates/selfService/selfService2Factor.php`. There are also fields for 'Root URL', 'Home URL', 'Valid post logout redirect URIs', and 'Web origins', all of which are currently empty.

Next, switch to tab "Credentials" to get the client secret.

Example configuration values:

- User name: uid
- Base URL: `http://openidserver/auth/realms/master`

- Client id: demo
- Secret key: 59bdf504-b76e-4138-8421-ef662b2c6c83

Remember device

You can allow users to remember the 2FA device for privacyIDEA, WebAuthn and YubiKey. When a device is remembered then users can login for the specified time without presenting their 2nd factor.

The password for the device remembering is used to authenticate the device data. It can be any long passphrase (use > 30 characters). LAM auto-generates one for you. If you change the passphrase then all device data gets invalid and users need to represent their 2nd factor again (which then can be saved again).

2-factor authentication

Provider	WebAuthn	?
Domain	example.com	?
Optional	<input type="checkbox"/>	?
Allow to remember device	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	?
Duration to remember devices	10m	?
Password to remember devices	?

Login

After logging in with user + password LAM will ask for the 2nd factor. If the user has setup multiple factors then he can choose one of them.

Two factor verification

Please [provide](#) your code.

Serial number
ccccccjclkg, vvgdggkkuhbl, vvfkibcvvhrv

YubiKey

Captcha

LAM Pro can optionally display a captcha to verify that logins are not from robots. Captchas will be displayed when you tick the checkbox to secure login with a captcha. The supported captcha providers are:

Google reCAPTCHA

You will need the site and secret key for your domain. They can be retrieved from here: <https://www.google.com/recaptcha>

Please note that your web server must be able to access "https://www.google.com/recaptcha/api/siteverify" to verify the captchas.

Friendly Captcha

Please enter your site (see applications) and API key. The web server must be able to contact "https://api.friendlycaptcha.com" for verification.

hCaptcha

Please enter your site and secret key (not API key). The web server must be able to contact "https://hcaptcha.com" for verification.

Captcha

Captcha	<input type="text" value="Google reCAPTCHA"/>	
reCAPTCHA site key	<input type="text"/>	
reCAPTCHA secret key	<input type="text"/>	
Secure login	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	

Lamdaemon

This section is only required if you want to display file system quotas or create home directories via lamdaemon.

Server list format options:

- "server": "server" is the DNS name of your script server
- "server:NAME": NAME is the display name of this server
- "server:NAME:/prefix": /prefix is the directory prefix for all operations. E.g. creating a home directory "/home/user" would create "/prefix/home/user" then.

You need to provide a fixed user name.

Self service requires a SSH connection with SSH key. Please generate a SSH key pair and provide the location to the **private** key file. If the key is protected by a password you can also specify it here.

In case you want to create home directories during user self registration please provide the rights for it (e.g. 750).

Lamdaemon settings

Server list	<input type="text"/>	
Path to external script	<input type="text"/>	
User name	<input type="text"/>	
SSH key file	<input type="text"/>	
SSH key password	<input type="password" value="....."/>	
Rights for the home directory	<input type="text" value="750"/>	

Page layout

Here you can specify what input fields your users can see. It is also possible to group several input fields.

Please use the arrow signs to change the order of the fields/groups.

You may also set some fields as read-only for your users. This can be done by clicking on the lock symbol. Read-only fields can be used to show your users additional data on the self service page that must not be changed by themselves (e.g. first/last name).

Sometimes, you may want to set a custom label for an input field. Click on the edit icon to set your own label text (Personal: Department is relabeled as "Business unit" here).

Self service configuration editor





Link to self service login page for your users: [Self service login](#)







Possible input fields

This is a list of input fields you may add to the self service page.

Table 7.2. Self service fields

Account type	Option	Description
Account locking	Password expiration	Read only value of password expiration date
Asterisk (voicemail)	Sync Asterisk password with Unix password	This is a hidden field. It will update the Asterisk password each time the Unix password is changed.
Group of names	Group memberships (read-only)	
Kerberos	Sync Kerberos password with Unix password	This is a hidden field. It will update the Kerberos password each time the Unix password is changed.
Kolab	Delegates	Allows to manage delegate permissions
	Invitation policy	Invitation policy management
Password policy	Last password change	read-only
Password self reset	Question	Security question selection
	Answer	Security answer
	Backup email	(External) backup email address that has no relation to user password.
Personal	Business category	
	Car license	
	Department	
	Description	
	Email address	
	Fax number	

	First name	
	Home telephone number	
	Initials	
	Job title	
	Last name	
	Location	
	Mobile number	
	Office name	
	Organisation	
	Organisational unit	
	Photo	Shows the user photo if set. The user may also remove the photo or upload a new one.
	Postal address	
	Postal code	
	Post office box	
	Registered address	
	Room number	
	State	
	Street	
	Telephone number	
	User certificates	Upload of user certificates in PEM or DER format
	User name	
	Web site	
 Mail routing	Local address (read-only)	
	Mail routing address (read-only)	
 OpenLDAP TOTP	OpenLDAP TOTP token + serial number	See OpenLDAP TOTP
 Quota	Quota (read-only)	Displays the user's system quote. Requires lamdaemon configuration.
 Samba 3	Password	Input field to set a new NT/LM password. The attribute "sambaPwd-LastSet" is updated if it existed before.
	Sync Samba LM password with Unix password	This is a hidden field. It will update the Samba LM password each time the Unix password is changed.
	Sync Samba NT password with Unix password	This is a hidden field. It will update the Samba NT password each time the Unix password is changed.
	Update attribute "sambaPwd-LastSet" on password change	Updates the password timestamp when password is synchronized with Unix.
	Last password change (read-only)	Displays the date and time of the user's last password change.

 Shadow	Account expiration date (read-only)	
	Last password change (read-only)	Displays the date and time of the user's last password change (Unix).
 Windows (AD, AD LDS, Sam- ba 4)	Password	Change the user's password
	Location	
	Mail alias (read-only)	
	Office name	
	Postal code	
	Post office box	
	Proxy-Addresses (read-only)	
	State	
	Street	
	Telephone number	
	Web site	
	 Unix	Common name
Group memberships (read-only)		
Login shell		
Password		This is also the source for several password synchronization options.
Sync Unix password with Windows password		This is a hidden field. It will update the Unix password each time the Windows password is changed.
 WebAuthn	WebAuthn devices	Allows the user to manage his webauthn/FIDO2 security keys.
 Kopano	"Send as" privileges	Define user who may send mails as this user
	Email aliases	Email aliases
 PyKota	Balance (read-only)	Current balance for printing
	Total paid (read-only)	Total money paid
	Payment history	History of user payments
	Job history	History of printed jobs

Module settings

This allows to configure some module specific options (e.g. custom scripts or password hash type).

Self service configuration editor

Link to self service login page for your users: [Self service login](#)

General settings Page layout Module settings

Custom scripts

Custom scripts

Output may contain HTML ?

Hide command in messages ?

Kerberos

Samba 3

LAM Pro can check the password history and minimum age for Samba 3 password changes. In this case please provide the LDAP suffix where your Samba 3 domain(s) are stored.

If you leave the field empty then no history and age checks will be done.

Password history: depending on your LDAP server you might need ascending or descending order. Just switch the setting if the password history is not correctly updated.

Samba 3

Domain suffix ?

Password history ?

Password self reset

Schema installation

Please install the LDAP schema as described here.

Settings

You can allow your users to reset their passwords themselves. This will reduce your administrative costs for cases where users forget their passwords.

To enable this feature please activate the checkbox "Enable password self reset link".

Hint: Please note that LAM Pro uses security questions by default. Activate confirmation mails and then deactivate security questions if you want to use only email validation.

The password reset must be finished by the user within 24h or the process must be restarted.

access to uid, mail, passwordSelfResetQuestion and passwordSelfResetAnswer. Please note that LAM Pro saves the password on your server file system. Therefore, it is required to protect your server against unauthorised access.

Please also specify the list of password reset questions that the user can choose.

Please note that self service and LAM admin interface are separated functionalities. You need to specify the list of possible security questions in both self service profile(s) and server profile(s).

You can inform your users via mail about their password change. The mail can include the new password by using the special wildcard "@@newPassword@@" . Additionally, you may want to insert other wildcards that are replaced by the corresponding LDAP attributes. E.g. "@@uid@@" will be replaced by the user name. See here for setting up your SMTP server.

LAM Pro can send your users an email with a confirmation link to validate their email address. Of course, this should only be used if the email account is independent from the user password (e.g. at external provider) or you use the backup email address feature. The mail body must include the confirmation link by using the special wildcard "@@resetLink@@" . Additionally, you may want to insert other wildcards that are replaced by the corresponding LDAP attributes. E.g. "@@uid@@" will be replaced by the user name.

There is also an option to skip the security question at all if email verification is enabled. In this case the password can be reset directly after clicking on the confirmation link. Please handle with care since anybody with access to the user's mail account can reset the password.

Captcha support

LAM Pro can optionally display a captcha to verify that password resets are not from robots. The captcha provider is configured on "General settings" tab.

Captchas will be displayed when you tick the checkbox to use a captcha.

Captcha

Use captcha ?

Troubleshooting:

1. You get messages like "Unable to find user account."

This can have multiple reasons:

- security questions enabled but no security question and/or answer set for this user
- user name + email combination does not exist
- no connection to LDAP server

Turn on logging in LAM's main configuration settings. The exact reason is logged on notice level.

2. You do not see security question and answer fields when logged into self service.

Probably, the user does not have the object class "passwordSelfReset" set. You can do this in admin interface. If you have multiple users to change then use the Multi Edit Tool to add the object class.

New fields for self service page

There are special fields that you may put on the self service page for your users. These fields allow them to change the reset questions and its answers. It is also possible to set a backup email address to reset passwords with an external email address.

Add new group	Group	Password self reset Answer Answer (2) Answer (3) Backup email Question Question (2) Question (3)
Add input field	Input field	Answer
	Group	Personal data
		Add ?

This is an example how can be presented to your users on the self service page:

Password reset

Question	<input type="text" value="What is the name of your favourite pet?"/>
Answer	<input type="text"/> ✓
Question	<input type="text"/>
Answer	<input type="text"/> ✓
Question	<input type="text"/>
Answer	<input type="text"/> ✓
Backup email	<input type="text" value="roland.gruber@rg-se.de"/>

Password reset link

After activating the password self reset feature there will be a new link on the self service login page. The text can be configured as described above (default: "Forgot password?").

Welcome to LAM self service. Please enter your user name and password.

User name

Password

Language

[Forgot password?](#) [Register new account](#)

When a user clicks on the link then he will be asked for identification with his user name and email address.

Password self reset

User name *

LAM Pro will use this information to find the correct LDAP entry of this user. It then displays the user's security questions and input fields for his new password. If the answer is correct then the new password will be set. Additionally, pwdAccountLockedTime will be removed and shadowLastChange updated to the current time if existing.

Password self reset

User name	roland2
Question	What is the name of your favourite pet?
Answer *	<input type="text"/>
New password *	<input type="text"/>
Repeat password *	<input type="text"/>
<input type="button" value="Ok"/>	

Prefilling the input fields

You might want to provide personalized URLs to your users that already prefill the fields in first step of password self reset. This can be done by adding an additional URL parameter with the attribute name in lower case.

LAM will not generate these URLs for you. This needs to be done by the system that provides the URL to your user.

Examples:

- `/lam/templates/selfService/selfServiceSP.php?scope=user&name=myProfile&page=passwordSelfReset&language=en_GB.utf8&uid=yourUserId`
- `/lam/templates/selfService/selfServiceSP.php?scope=user&name=myProfile&page=passwordSelfReset&language=en_GB.utf8&mail=yourUserId@company.com`
- `/lam/templates/selfService/selfServiceSP.php?scope=user&name=myProfile&page=passwordSelfReset&language=en_GB.utf8&uidmail=yourUserId` (for "user or email" method)
- `/lam/templates/selfService/selfServiceSP.php?scope=user&name=myProfile&page=passwordSelfReset&language=en_GB.utf8&customattribute=yourUserId`

User self registration

With LAM Pro your users can create their own accounts if you like. LAM Pro will display an additional link on the self service login page that allows you users to create a new account including email validation (see here for setting up your SMTP server).

You enable this feature in your self service profile. Just activate the checkbox "Enable self registration link".



User self registration

Enable self registration link	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ?
Link text	<input type="text"/> ?
Admin DN *	<input type="text" value="cn=admin,o=test,c=de"/> ?
Admin password *	<input type="password" value="....."/> ?
RDN identifier	<input type="text" value="uid"/> ?
Suffix for new users	<input type="text"/> ?
Mail attribute	<input type="text"/> ?
Object classes *	<input type="text" value="inetOrgPerson"/> ?
Attributes *	<input type="text" value="optional::givenName::First name::/^[[:alnum:]]+\$/:Please enter a valid first name.
required::sn::Last name::/^[[:alnum:]]+\$/:Please enter a valid last name."/> ?
Create home directory	<input type="text"/> ?
Header ?	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;"> <p>Quellcode</p> <p>B I U S x₂ x²</p> <p>☰ ☱ ☲ ☳ ☴ ☵ ☶ ☷</p> <p>📷 📑 📧 🌐 🔗 📧</p> <p>Stil Format Schriftart Größe</p> </div>

Confirmation mail settings

From address *	<input type="text" value="lampro@rg-se.de"/> ?
Subject *	<input type="text" value="Account creation confirmation"/> ?
HTML format	<input type="checkbox"/> ?
Text *	<input type="text" value="Hi,
please click on the following link to create your account:
@@creationLink@@"/> ?

User information email

From address *	<input type="text" value="lampro@rg-se.de"/> ?
BCC address	<input type="text"/> ?
Subject *	<input type="text" value="Account created"/> ?

Options:

Link text: This is the label for the link to the self registration. If empty "Register new account" will be used.

Admin DN and password: Please enter the LDAP DN and its password that should be used to create new users. This DN also needs to be able to do LDAP searches by uid in the self service part of your LDAP tree.

Object classes: This is a list of object classes that are used to build the new user accounts. Please enter one object class in each line. If you use LAM Pro password self reset feature then do not forget to add "passwordSelfReset" here.

Attributes: This is a list of additional attributes that the user can enter. Please note that user name, password and email address (attribute "mail") are mandatory anyway and need not be specified. Just in case you use the legacy attribute "email" for account it needs to be specified (attribute "mail" will then not be shown).

Each line represents one LDAP attribute. The settings are separated by "::". The first setting specifies the field type. The second setting is the LDAP attribute name (add ";binary" to attribute names for file upload). Depending on the field type you can enter additional options:

Table 7.3.

Description	Type	Attribute name	First option	Second option	Third option
An optional input field that is displayed on the registration page.	optional	e.g. "givenName" or "jpegPhoto;binary"	Label that is displayed on page	optional regular expression for validation (e.g. "/^[0-9a-zA-Z]+\$/")	validation message if value does not match validation expression
A required input field that is displayed on the registration page. Self registration cannot be done if such a field is left empty by the user.	required	e.g. "sn" or "jpegPhoto;binary"	Label that is displayed on page	optional regular expression for validation (e.g. "/^[0-9a-zA-Z]+\$/")	validation message if value does not match validation expression
Constant attribute value, not visible for the user. Can be used to set some initial values or data that must not be edited by the user.	constant	e.g. "homeDirectory"	attribute value, supports wildcards to insert other attribute values (e.g. "@@uid@@")		
Auto-numbering for attributes such as uidNumber. Will do a search for attribute values in the given range and use highest value + 1.	autorange	e.g. uidNumber	LDAP search base, e.g. ou=people,dc=company,dc=com	Minimum value, e.g. 1000	Maximum value, e.g. 2000

For a syntax description of validation expressions see here [<http://perldoc.perl.org/perlre.html>]. Validation is optional, you can leave these options blank.

Examples:

Unix account:

optional::givenName::First name::/^[[:alnum:]]+\$/:Please enter a valid first name.

required::sn::Last name::/^[[:alnum:]]+\$/:Please enter a valid last name.

constant::homeDirectory::/home/@@uid@@

autorange::uidNumber::ou=people,dc=company,dc=com::10000::20000

If you use the object class "inetOrgPerson" and do not provide the "cn" attribute then LAM will set it to the user name value.

Active Directory/Samba4:

required::cn::Common Name::/^[[[:alnum:]]+\$/u::Enter common name.

constant::userPrincipalName::@@uid@@@samba4.test

constant::sAMAccountName::@@uid@@

constant::userAccountControl::512

Please note that only simple input boxes are supported for account registration. The user may log in to self service when his account was created to manage all his attributes.

Create home directory: This will create the home directory via lamdaemon. The user must have the following attributes: uid, uidNumber, gidNumber, homeDirectory

Approval

You can send the account request to an administrator for approval. The email will include links for approval/reject. Please use the wildcards @@approveLink@@ and @@rejectLink@@ for this.

If the request was rejected then no email will be sent to the user.

Approval settings

Approval required ?

From address* ?

To address* ?

Subject* ?

HTML format ?

Text* ?

Captcha support

LAM Pro can optionally display a captcha to verify that registrations are not from robots. The captcha provider is configured on "General settings" tab.

Captchas will be displayed when you tick the checkbox to use a captcha.

Captcha

Use captcha ?

User view:

The user can register by clicking on a link on the self service login page:

Here he can insert the data that you specified in the self service profile:

LAM will then send him an email with a validation link that is valid for 24 hours. When he clicks on this link then the account will be created in the self service user suffix. The DN will look like this: *uid=<user name>,...*

Request Access

Use this feature to allow your users to request access for group memberships. Requests will require the approval by the group owners/managers and optionally a special approver group (leave empty for owner/manager approval only).

Module Configuration

First, the request access module needs to be activated and configured on tab "Module settings". Here tick "Enable request access" and provide the information where your groups are located.

Group of names and group of unique names are supported. The LDAP filter is optional, LAM will offer the user only group of (unique) names or Windows groups that have defined owners/managers.

Request Access

Enable request access ?

LDAP suffix of groups * ?

LDAP filter for groups ?

From address * ?

Subject for owner email * ?

Text for owner email * ?

Approvers group DN ?

Subject for approver email ?

Text for approver email ?

Email subject for approved requests * ?

Email text for approved requests * ?

Email subject for denied requests * ?

Email text for denied requests * ?

Owner access request

Dear @@cn@@,

a new access request was created by \$\$cn\$\$:

Requested Groups

\$\$requested_groups\$\$

Reason

Approver access request

Dear @@cn@@,

there are new access requests waiting for approval.

Please check [here](#).

Best regards,

Your request was approved

Dear \$\$cn\$\$,

your access request was approved.

Requested Groups

\$\$requested_groups\$\$

Your request was denied

Dear \$\$cn\$\$,

your access request was denied.

Requested Groups

\$\$requested_groups\$\$

The email body texts support wildcards. You can use group owner/approver LDAP attributes in the form @@tribute@@ (e.g. @@uid@@ for the user name).

The requester's LDAP attributes can be used in the form \$\$attribute\$\$ (e.g. \$\$uid\$\$ for the user name). This is supported for mails to the group owners/managers and the approval/deny mails to the requester.

The wildcard \$\$requested_groups\$\$ will resolve to the requested groups. This is available for mails to the group owners and the approval/deny mails to the requester.

The wildcard \$\$requester_notes\$\$ resolves to the requester's optional notes. This is available for the mails to the group owners/managers.

Example for owner email:

Dear @@cn@@,

a new access request was created by \$\$cn\$\$:

Requested groups: \$\$requested_groups\$\$

Reason: \$\$requester_notes\$\$

Please open LAM Pro's self service for details.

Best regards,
IT team

Example for approver email:

Dear @@cn@@,

there are new access requests waiting for approval.

Please check here(link to self service).

Best regards,
IT team

Example for approved/denied request email:

Dear \$\$cn\$\$,

your access request was approved.
Requested groups: \$\$requested_groups\$\$

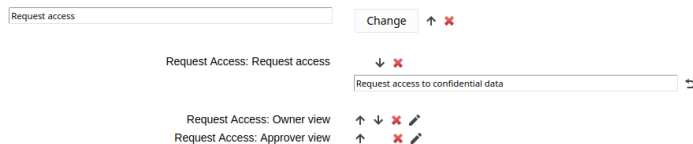
Best regards,
IT team

Field Configuration

Next, the fields need to be added to the "Page layout" tab. There are three fields:

- Request Access: Request access - User view that allows to initiate the process.
- Request Access: Owner view - Owner view for group owners.
- Request Access: Approver view - Approver view for approver group

You can set custom labels using the pencil icon.



Request view

The user sees a button to open the new request dialog. Here the groups can be selected and an optional note can be provided.

Request access

Request access to confidential data

Start new request

Groups

approvers: The final approvers
 project-abc: This is project ABC
 project-admins: These are project admins
project-xyz: This is project XYZ

Note for approvers

Hi, i joined the company this month and would like to support on XYZ.

Approval view

Once the request is created, all owners of the respective groups get an email notification. They can then enter self service and view their open requests.

If an approver group is configured then its members will get an email notification after owner approval. In case no approver group is configured, the permissions are directly granted when the owner approves the request.

Owner approval

Requester	Requested group	Note	Approve or deny
thuber	project-xyz	Hi, i joined the company this month and would like to support on XYZ.	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>

Custom fields

This module allows you to manage LDAP attributes that are not covered by the other LAM modules (e.g. if you use custom LDAP schemas). You can fully define how your input fields look like:

- Label
- LDAP attribute name
- Unique name for field
- Help text
- Read-only display
- Field type: text, password, text area, checkbox, radio buttons, select list, file upload, LDAP date (and time), constant
- Validation via regular expression
- Error message if validation fails

To create custom fields for the Self Service please edit your Self Service profile and switch to tab "Module settings". Here you can add a new field. Simply fill the fields and press on "Add".

Please note that the field name cannot be changed later. It is the unique ID for this field.

After you created your fields please press on "Sync fields with page layout". Now you can switch to tab "Page layout" and add your new fields like any other standard field.

Examples for fields and their representation in Self Service:

Text field:

Text fields allow to specify a validation expression and error message.

You can also enable auto-completion. In this case LAM will search all accounts for the given attribute and provide auto-completion hints when the user edits this field. This should only be used if there is a limited number of different values for this attribute.

In case your field is a date value you can show a calendar for easy editing.

Example calendar formats:

- d.m.Y: 31.12.2025
- Y-m-d: 2025-12-31
- d M, y: 31 Dec, 25
- d MM, Y: 31 December, 2025

You can escape wildcards with "\". E.g. "d.m.Y \d" will result in "31.12.2025 d".

givenName ✖

Presentation in Self Service:

Password field:

You can also manage custom password fields. LAM Pro will display two fields where the user must enter the same password. You can hash the password if needed.

customPassword ✖

Type	Password	
Label	Custom Password	?
Attribute name *	userPassword	?
Help text		?
Validation	Regular expression	
Validation expression		?
Validation message		?
Password hash type	ARGON2ID	?

Presentation in Self Service:

Custom Password

Text area:

This adds a multi-line field. The options are similar to text fields. Additionally, you can set the size with the number of columns and rows.

Please note that the validation expression should be set to multi-line. This is done by adding "m" at the end.

postalAddress ✖

Type	Text area	
Label	Postal address	?
Attribute name *	postalAddress	?
Help text		?
Required	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	?
Validation	Regular expression	
Validation expression	/[0-9a-zA-Z]*\$/m	?
Validation message	Invalid postal address	?
Columns	25	?
Rows	4	?

Presentation in Self Service:

Postal address* 12345 City

Checkbox:

Sometimes you may want to allow only yes/no values for your LDAP attributes. This can be represented by a checkbox. You can specify the values for checked and unchecked. The default value is set if the LDAP attribute has no value.

carLicense ✖

Type	Checkbox	
Label	Car license	?
Attribute name *	carLicense	?
Help text		?
Value for "checked" *	yes	?
Value for "unchecked" *	no	?
Default value	<input type="checkbox"/>	?

Presentation in Self Service:

Car license

Radio buttons:

This displays a list of radio buttons where the user can select one value.

You can specify a mapping of LDAP attribute values and their display (label) on the Self Service page. To add more mapping fields please press "Add more mapping fields".

businessCategory ✖

Type: Radio buttons

Label: ?

Attribute name *: ?

Help text: ?

Value mapping ?

Value	Label
<input type="text"/>	-
hr	Human Resources
it	IT
man	Management
org	Organisation

Presentation in Self Service:

Business category

-
- Human Resources
- IT
- Management
- Organisation

Select list:

Select lists allow the user to select a value in a large list of options. The definition of the possible values and their display is similar to radio buttons.

You can also allow multiple values.

departmentNumber ✖

Type: Select list

Label: ?

Attribute name *: ?

Help text: ?

Allow multiple values: ?

Minimum: ?

Maximum: ?

Value mapping ?

Value	Label
car	Automotive
it	IT Consulting
bank	Financial Services
insurance	Insurance

Presentation in Self Service:

Department: ▼

Location:

LDAP search select list

This is similar to "Select list" but the options are read from LDAP. You can use this to define e.g. a DN selection list. Multiple values are supported.

manager ✖

Type	LDAP search select list
Label	Manager ?
Attribute name *	manager ?
Help text	Manager value ?
Allow multiple values	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ?
Minimum	1 ?
Maximum	3 ?
LDAP suffix *	?
LDAP filter *	(objectclass=*) ?
Attribute name *	dn ?
Displayed attributes *	\$dn\$?

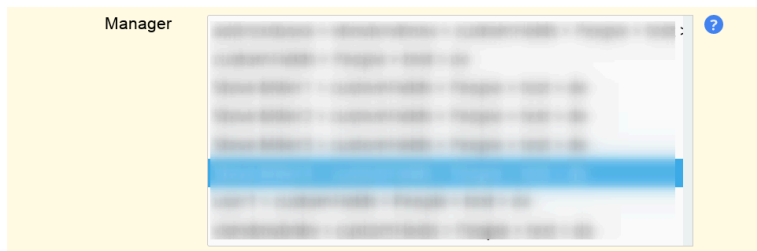
LDAP suffix: The LDAP DN that is used as starting point to search for LDAP entries.

LDAP filter: Only LDAP entries that match this filter will be used. If all entries should be used then use "(objectclass=*)".

Attribute name: The values of this attribute will be used to build the selection list.

Display attributes: List of attributes to show as label for the options in select box. Attribute wildcards are surrounded by "\$", e.g. "\$cn\$" will be replaced by "cn" attribute. Default is "\$dn\$".

Presentation:



LDAP date

Use this for LDAP attributes with syntax "Generalized Time" (1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.24).

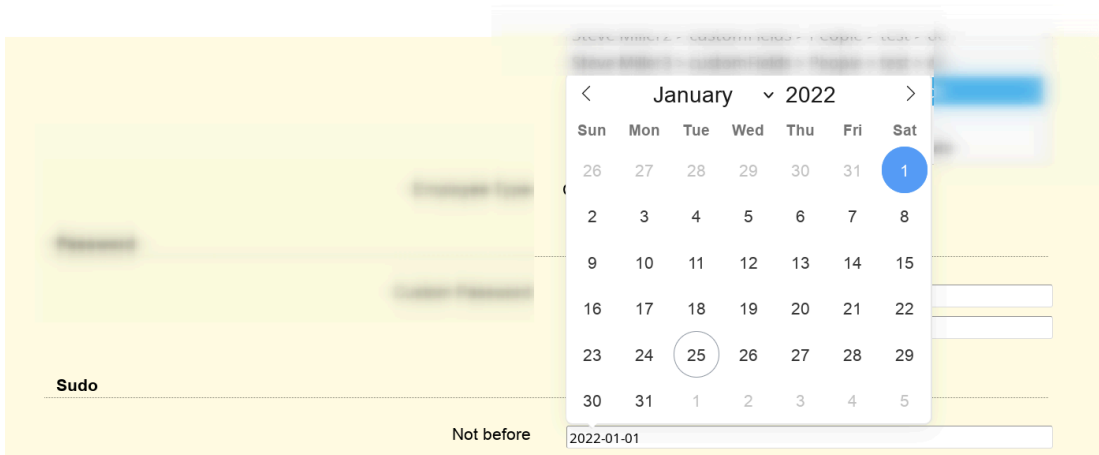
LAM will automatically set hour/minute/second to "0". If this is not intended please use type "LDAP date and time".

sudoNotBefore ✖

Type	LDAP date
Label	Not before ?
Attribute name *	sudoNotBefore ?
Help text	?
Required	<input type="checkbox"/> ?
Allow multiple values	<input type="checkbox"/>
Format	Y-m-d ?
Validation message	?

Presentation:

LAM will display a calendar to select the date.



LDAP date and time

Use this for LDAP attributes with syntax "Generalized Time" (1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.24).

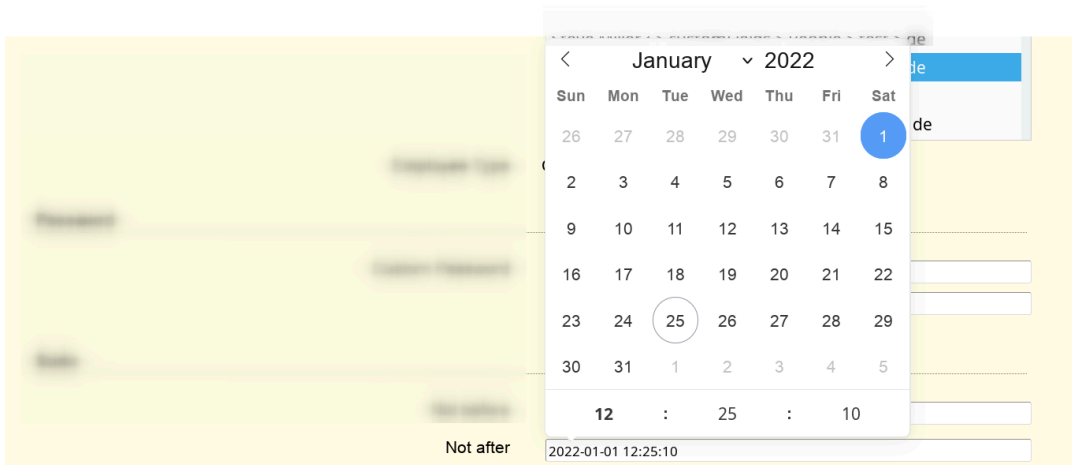
LAM can convert the displayed value to the configured time zone of your server/self service profile. In this case, please activate "Display in local time".

sudoNotAfter ✖

Type	LDAP date and time
Label	Not after ?
Attribute name *	sudoNotAfter ?
Help text	? ?
Required	<input type="checkbox"/> ?
Allow multiple values	<input type="checkbox"/>
Format	Y-m-d H:i:s ?
Validation message	? ?
Display in local time	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ?

Presentation:

LAM will display a calendar to select the date and time.



Constant value

This will set the attribute to a constant value. You can also specify wildcards to inject other attribute's values.

employeeType ✖

Type	Constant
Label	Employee Type ?
Attribute name *	employeeType ?
Help text	help test ?
Value *	!!cn!! ?

Wildcards:

- %attribute%: attribute value
- @attribute@: first character of attribute
- ?attribute?: first character of attribute in lower case
- !attribute!: first character of attribute in upper case
- ??attribute??: attribute in lower case
- !!attribute!!: attribute in upper case
- ((attribute)): space if attribute is set
- \$attribute|;\$: attribute values separated by ";" (you can set other separators if you want)

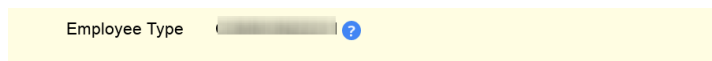
Examples for attributes gn="Steve", sn="Miller" and memberUid=("user1", "user2") (specified value -> resulting LDAP value):

Table 7.4.

Constant value	Resulting LDAP value
my constant	my constant
%gn%	Steve
%gn%((gn)%sn%	Steve Miller (would be "Miller" if gn is empty)
\$memberUid , \$	user1, user2

Presentation:

The LDAP value will be shown as text.



File upload:

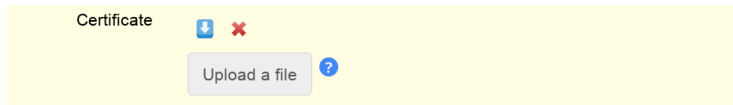
This is used for binary data. You can restrict uploaded data to a given file extension and set the maximum file size.

userCertificate ✖

Type	File upload
Label	Certificate ?
Attribute name *	userCertificate;binary ?
Help text	? ?
File extension	.crt ?
Maximum file size	100000 ?
Multi value	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ?

Presentation:

The uploaded data may also be downloaded via LAM.



Validation expressions:

The validation expressions follow the standard of Perl regular expressions [http://perldoc.perl.org/perlre.html]. They start and end with a "/". The beginning of a line is specified by "^" and the end by "\$".

Examples:

/^[a-z0-9]+\$/ allows small letters and numbers. The value must not be empty ("+").

/^[a-z0-9]+\$/i allows small and capital letters ("i" at the end means ignore case) and numbers. The value must not be empty ("+").

Special characters that must be escaped with "\": "\", ".", "(", ")"

E.g. /^[a-z0-9\\.]+\$/i

OpenLDAP TOTP

This allows your users to setup OpenLDAP TOTP tokens.

Please note that this requires to use a bind user that is also used for all operations. This user needs to be able to add/remove the TOTP object classes and attributes.

Server settings

Server address *	<input type="text" value="192.168.0.54"/>	?
LDAP suffix *	<input type="text" value="ou=people,o=test,c=de"/>	?
Activate TLS	<input type="checkbox"/>	?
Follow referrals	<input type="checkbox"/>	?
LDAP search attribute	<input type="text" value="uid"/>	?
LDAP user	<input type="text" value="cn=admin,o=test,c=de"/>	?
LDAP password	<input type="password" value="....."/>	?
Use for all operations	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	?
Additional LDAP filter	<input type="text"/>	?
HTTP authentication	<input type="checkbox"/>	?
Default language	<input type="text" value="English (Great Britain)"/>	?
Enforce language	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	?
Time zone	<input type="text" value="Europe/London"/>	?
Base URL	<input type="text" value="http://localhost"/>	?

On page layout tab you can then add the fields for serial number (optional) and the token. Users will then be able to manage their token via self service.

[↑](#) [×](#)

OpenLDAP TOTP: Serial number [↓](#) [×](#) [✎](#)

OpenLDAP TOTP: Register new token [↑](#) [×](#) [✎](#)

On module settings tab please provide the DN of your TOTP settings entry (object class "oathTOTPParams").

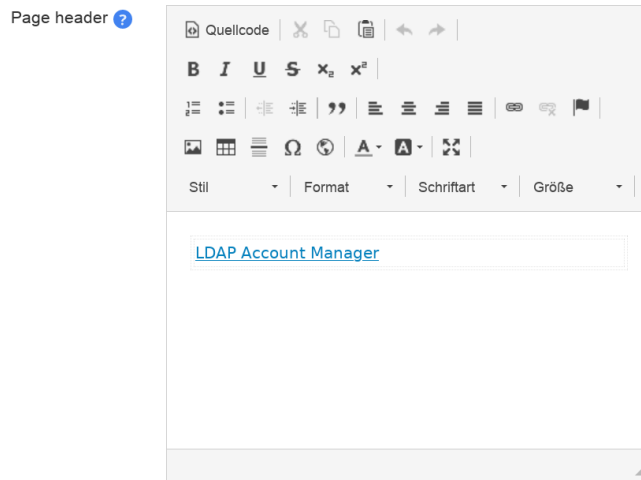


Adapt the self service to your corporate design

LAM Pro allows you to integrate custom CSS style definitions and design the header of all self service pages. This way you can integrate your own logo and use your company's colors.

Custom header

The default LAM Pro header includes a logo and a horizontal line. You can enter any HTML code here. It will be included in the self services pages after the body tag.



CSS files



Usually, companies have regulations about their corporate design and use common CSS files. This assures a common appearance of all intranet pages (e.g. colors and fonts). To include additional CSS files just use the following setting for this task. The additional CSS links will be added after LAM Pro's default CSS link. This way you can overwrite LAM Pro's style.












Appendix A. LDAP schema files



Here is a list of needed LDAP schema files for the different LAM modules. For OpenLDAP we also provide a source where you can get the files.

Table A.1. LDAP schema files

	Account type	Object class(es)	Schema name	Source	Notes
	Unix accounts	posixAccount, shadowAccount, hostObject, posixGroup	nis.schema, rfc2307bis.schema, ldapns.schema (hostObject)	Part of OpenLDAP installation, part of libpam-ldap (ldapns.schema)	The rfc2307bis.schema is only supported by LAM Pro. Use the nis.schema if you do not want to upgrade to LAM Pro.
	Address book entries	inetOrgPerson	inetorgperson.schema	Part of OpenLDAP installation	
	Samba 3 accounts	sambaSamAccount, sambaGroupMapping, sambaDomain	samba.schema	Part of Samba tarball (examples/LDAP/samba.schema)	
	Windows AD (Samba 4)	user, group, computer		Samba 4 built-in	
	AD LDS	user, group		AD LDS built-in	
	Kolab 2/3 users	kolabUser	kolab2/3.schema, rfc2739.schema	Part of Kolab 2/3 installation	
	Asterisk (extension)	AsteriskSIPUser, AsteriskExtension	asterisk.schema	Part of Asterisk installation	
	PyKota users, groups, printers and billing codes	pykotaObject, pykotaAccount, pykotaAccountBalance, pykotaGroup, pykotaPrinter, pykotaBilling	pykota.schema	Part of PyKota installation	
	Mail routing	inetLocalMailRecipient	misc.schema	Part of OpenLDAP installation	
	Hosts	hostObject, device	ldapns.schema	Part of libpam-ldap installation	The device object class is only available in LAM Pro.
	Authorized services	authorizedServiceObject	ldapns.schema	Part of libpam-ldap installation	
	Mail aliases	nisMailAlias	misc.schema	Part of OpenLDAP installation	
	Qmail user	qmailUser	qmail.schema	Part of qmail_ldap [http://	LAM Pro only

	Account type	Object class(es)	Schema name	Source	Notes
				www.n-rg4u.com/]	
	MAC addresses	ieee802device	nis.schema	Part of OpenLDAP installation	
	IP addresses	ipHost	nis.schema	Part of OpenLDAP installation	LAM Pro only
	Puppet	puppetClient	puppet.schema	Puppet on GitHub [https://github.com/puppetlabs/puppet/blob/master/ext/ldap/puppet.schema]	
	EDU person	eduPerson	eduperson.schema	http://middleware.internet2.edu [http://middleware.internet2.edu/eduperson/]	
	Simple Accounts	account	cosine.schema	Part of OpenLDAP installation	
	SSH public keys	ldapPublicKey	openssh-lpk.schema	Included in patch from http://code.google.com/p/openssh-lpk/	
	Filesystem quotas	systemQuotas	quota.schema	Linux DiskQuota [http://sourceforge.net/projects/linuxquota/]	
	Group of (unique) names	groupOfNames, groupOfUniqueNames, groupOfMembers	core.schema	Part of OpenLDAP installation	LAM Pro only
	Groups	organizationalRole	core.schema	Part of OpenLDAP installation	LAM Pro only
	DHCP	dhcpOptions, dhcpSubnet, dhcpServer	dhcp.schema	docs/schema/dhcp.schema	The LDAP suffix should be set to your dhcpServer entry.
	Bind DLZ DNS	dlzZone, dlzHost, dlzSOARecord, dlzNSRecord, dlzARecord, dlzMXRecord, dlzCNameRecord, dlzPTRRecord	dlz.schema	part of Bind DLZ patch [http://bind-dlz.sourceforge.net/]	LAM Pro only
	Aliases	alias, uidObject	core.schema	Part of OpenLDAP installation	LAM Pro only

	Account type	Object class(es)	Schema name	Source	Notes
	NIS netgroups	nisNetgroup	nis.schema	Part of OpenLDAP installation	
	NIS objects	nisObject	nis.schema	Part of OpenLDAP installation	LAM Pro only
	Automount objects	automount	autofs.schema, rfc2307bis.schema	Autofs LDAP	LAM Pro only
	Oracle databases	orclNetService	oidbase.schema, oidnet.schema, oidrdbm-s.schema, alias.schema	Preinstalled on Oracle directory server, OpenLDAP schemas can be downloaded e.g. here [http://www.idevelopment.info/data/Oracle/DBA_tips/LDAP/LDAP_8.shtml]	LAM Pro only
	Password policies	pwdPolicy, device	ppolicy.schema, core.schema	Part of OpenLDAP installation	LAM Pro only
	PowerDNS	dNSDomain2, domainRelatedObject	dnsdomain2.schema	Part of OpenLDAP installation	LAM Pro only
	FreeRadius users	radiusprofile	openldap.schema	Part of FreeRadius installation	
	Heimdal Kerberos	krb5KDCEntry	hdb.schema	Part of Heimdal Kerberos installation	LAM Pro only
	MIT Kerberos	krbPrincipal, krbPrincipalAux, krbTicketPolicyAux	kerberos.schema	Part of MIT Kerberos installation	LAM Pro only
	Simple Security Object	simpleSecurityObject	core.schema	Part of OpenLDAP installation	LAM Pro only
	Sudo roles	sudoRole	sudo.schema	Part of sudo-ldap installation	LAM Pro only
	Kopano	kopano-user, kopano-contact, kopano-group, kopano-dynamicgroup, kopano-addresslist, kopano-server	kopano.ldif	Part of Kopano installation	LAM Pro only
	IMAP mailboxes	-	-	-	Does not require any schema.
	LDAP views	nsview, organizationalunit	built-in	Part of LDAP server installation (e.g. 389 server)	LAM Pro only

	Account type	Object class(es)	Schema name	Source	Notes
	Apache Guacamole	guacConfig-Group	guacConfig-Group.ldif	Part of Guacamole Auth LDAP installation	LAM Pro only
	All	dynamicObject	built-in with DDS module	Part of LDAP server installation	LAM Pro only, requires DDS extension on LDAP server side

Appendix B. Security

LAM configuration passwords

LAM supports a two level authorization system for its configuration. Therefore, there are two types of configuration passwords:

- **master configuration password:** needed to change general settings, create/delete server profiles and self service profiles
- **server profile password:** used to change the settings of a server profile (e.g. LDAP server and account types to manage)

The master configuration password can be used to reset a server profile password. Each server profile has its own profile password.

Both password types are stored as hash values in the configuration files for enhanced security.

Use of SSL

The data which is transferred between you and LAM is very sensitive. Please always use SSL encrypted connections between LAM and your browser to protect yourself against network sniffers.

LDAP with SSL and TLS

SSL will be used if you use `ldaps://servername` in your configuration profile. TLS can be activated with the "Activate TLS" option.

If your LDAP server uses a SSL certificate of a well-know certificate authority (CA) then you probably need no changes. If you use a custom CA in your company then there are two ways to setup the CA certificates.

Setup SSL certificates in LAM general settings

This is much easier than system level setup and will only affect LAM. There might be some cases where other web applications on the same web server are influenced.

See here for details.

Setup SSL certificates on system level

This will make the CA certificates available also to other applications on your system (e.g. other web applications).

You will need to setup `ldap.conf` to trust your server certificate. Some installations use `/etc/ldap.conf` and some use `/etc/ldap/ldap.conf`. It is a good idea to symlink `/etc/ldap.conf` to `/etc/ldap/ldap.conf`. Specify the server CA certificate with the following option:

```
TLS_CACERT /etc/ldap/ca/myCA/cacert.pem
```

This needs to be the public part of the signing certificate authority. See "man ldap.conf" for additional options.

You may also need to specify the CA certificate in your Apache configuration by using the option "LDAPTrustedGlobalCert":

```
LDAPTrustedGlobalCert CA_BASE64 /etc/ldap/ca/myCA/cacert.pem
```

SELinux

In case your server has SELinux installed you might need to extend the SELinux ruleset. E.g. your webserver might not be allowed to write in /var/lib.

Read SELinux status

The following command will tell you if SELinux is running in Enforcing or Permissive mode.

Enforcing: access that does not match rules is denied

Permissive: access that does not match rules is granted but logged to audit.log

```
getenforce
```

Set SELinux to Permissive mode

This will just log any access violations. You will need this to get a list of missing rights.

```
setenforce Permissive
```

Now do any actions inside LAM that you need for your daily work (e.g. edit server profiles, manage LDAP entries, ...).

Extend SELinux rules

SELinux now has logged any violations to audit.log. You can use this now to extend your ruleset and enable enforcing later.

The following example is for httpd. You can also adapt it to e.g. nginx.

```
# build additional SELinux rules from audit.log
grep httpd /var/log/audit/audit.log | audit2allow -m httpdlocal -o httpdlocal.te
```

The httpdlocal.te might look like this:

```
module httpdlocal 1.0;

require {
    type httpd_t;
    type var_lib_t;
    class file { setattr write };
}
```

```
#===== httpd_t =====
```

```
##### WARNING 'httpd_t' is not allowed to write or create to var_lib_t. Change the lab
##### $ semanage fcontext -a -t httpd_var_lib_t /var/lib/ldap-account-manager/config/la
##### $ restorecon -R -v /var/lib/ldap-account-manager/config/lam.conf
allow httpd_t var_lib_t:file { setattr write };
```

Now we can compile and install this rule:

```
# build module
checkmodule -M -m -o httpdlocal.mod httpdlocal.te
# package module
```

```
semodule_package -o httpdlocal.pp -m httpdlocal.mod
# install module
semodule -i httpdlocal.pp
```

Now you can switch back to Enforcing mode:

```
setenforce Enforcing
```

LAM should now work as expected with active SELinux.

Chrooted servers

If your server is chrooted and you have no access to `/dev/random` or `/dev/urandom` this can be a security risk. LAM stores your LDAP password encrypted in the session. LAM uses `rand()` to generate the key if `/dev/random` and `/dev/urandom` are not accessible. Therefore the key can be easily guessed. An attacker needs read access to the session file (e.g. by another Apache instance) to exploit this.

Protection of your LDAP password and directory contents

You have to install the OpenSSL extension for PHP to enable encryption.

Your LDAP password is stored encrypted in the session file. The key and IV to decrypt it are stored in two cookies. We use OpenSSL/AES to encrypt the password. All data that was read from LDAP and needs to be stored in the session file is also encrypted.

Apache configuration

Security headers

LAM already sets several security headers by default. For production machines it is recommended to run LAM with "https://" enabled. In this case the HSTS header should be set, e.g. like this:

```
Header always set Strict-Transport-Security "max-age=31536000"
```

This will enforce browsers to connect via "https://". Please note that you need to make sure that your installation has a valid certificate now and in the future. The configuration requires `mod_headers` to be active.

Sensitive directories

LAM includes several `.htaccess` files to protect your configuration files and temporary data. Apache is often configured to not use `.htaccess` files by default. Therefore, please check your Apache configuration and change the override setting to:

```
AllowOverride All
```

If you are experienced in configuring Apache then you can also copy the security settings from the `.htaccess` files to your main Apache configuration.

If possible, you should not rely on `.htaccess` files but also move the `config` and `sess` directory to a place outside of your WWW root. You can put a symbolic link in the LAM directory so that LAM finds the configuration/session files.

Security sensitive directories:

config: Contains your LAM configuration and account profiles

- LAM configuration passwords (SSHA hashed)
- default values for new accounts
- directory must be accessible by Apache but needs not to be accessible by the browser

sess: PHP session files

- LAM admin password in clear text or OpenSSL encrypted
- cached LDAP entries in clear text or OpenSSL encrypted
- directory must be accessible by Apache but needs not to be accessible by the browser

tmp: temporary files

- PDF documents which may also include passwords
- images of your users
- directory contents must be accessible by browser but directory itself needs not to be browsable

Use LDAP HTTP authentication for LAM

With HTTP authentication Apache will be responsible to ask for the user name and password. Both will then be forwarded to LAM which will use it to access LDAP. This approach gives you more flexibility to restrict the number of users that may access LAM (e.g. by requiring group memberships).

First of all you need to load additional Apache modules. These are "mod_ldap [http://httpd.apache.org/docs/2.2/mod/mod_ldap.html]" and "mod_authnz_ldap [http://httpd.apache.org/docs/2.2/mod/mod_authnz_ldap.html]".

Next you can add a file called "lam_auth_ldap" to /etc/apache/conf.d. This simple example restricts access to all URLs beginning with "lam" to LDAP authentication.

```
<location /lam>
  AuthType Basic
  AuthBasicProvider ldap
  AuthName "LAM"
  AuthLDAPURL "ldap://localhost:389/ou=People,dc=company,dc=com?uid"
  Require valid-user
</location>
```

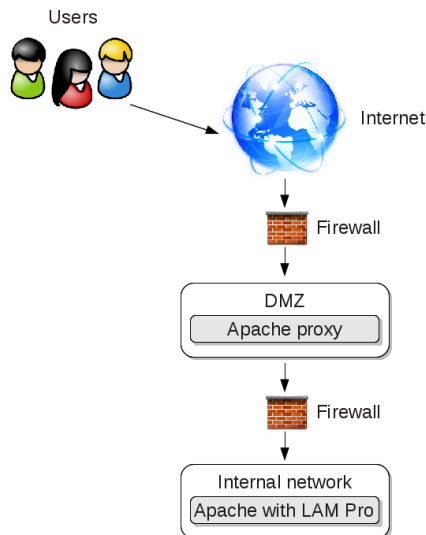
You can also require that your users belong to a certain Unix group in LDAP:

```
<location /lam>
  AuthType Basic
  AuthBasicProvider ldap
  AuthName "LAM"
  AuthLDAPURL "ldap://localhost:389/ou=People,dc=company,dc=com?uid"
  Require valid-user
  # force membership of lam-admins
  AuthLDAPGroupAttribute memberUid
  AuthLDAPGroupAttributeIsDN off
  Require ldap-group cn=lam-admins,ou=group,dc=company,dc=com
</location>
```

Please see the Apache documentation [http://httpd.apache.org/docs/2.2/mod/mod_authnz_ldap.html] for more details.

Self Service behind proxy in DMZ (LAM Pro)

In some cases you might want to make the self service accessible via the internet. Here is an Apache config to forward only the required URLs via a proxy server (lamproxy.company.com) in your DMZ to the internal LAM server (lam.company.com).



This configuration allows your users to open <https://lamproxy.company.com> which will then proxy the self service on the internal server.

```

<VirtualHost lamproxy.company.com:443>
    ServerName lamproxy.company.com
    ErrorLog /var/log/apache2/lam-proxy-error.log
    CustomLog /var/log/apache2/lam-proxy-access.log combined
    DocumentRoot /var/www/lam-proxy
    <Proxy *>
        Require all granted
    </Proxy>
    SSLProxyEngine on
    SSLEngine on
    SSLCertificateFile /etc/apache2/ssl/apache.pem
    ProxyPreserveHost On
    ProxyRequests off
    loglevel info

    # redirect front page to self service login page
    RewriteEngine on
    RedirectMatch ^/$ /templates/selfService/selfServiceLogin.php?scope=user\&name=

    # proxy required URLs
    ProxyPass /tmp https://lam.company.com/lam/tmp
    ProxyPass /sess https://lam.company.com/lam/sess
    ProxyPass /templates/lib https://lam.company.com/lam/templates/lib
    ProxyPass /templates/selfService https://lam.company.com/lam/templates/selfServ
    ProxyPass /templates/misc https://lam.company.com/lam/templates/misc
    ProxyPass /style https://lam.company.com/lam/style
    ProxyPass /graphics https://lam.company.com/lam/graphics

    ProxyPassReverse /tmp https://lam.company.com/lam/tmp
    ProxyPassReverse /sess https://lam.company.com/lam/sess
    ProxyPassReverse /templates/lib https://lam.company.com/lam/templates/lib
  
```

```
ProxyPassReverse /templates/selfService https://lam.company.com/lam/templates/s
ProxyPassReverse /templates/misc https://lam.company.com/lam/templates/misc
ProxyPassReverse /style https://lam.company.com/lam/style
ProxyPassReverse /graphics https://lam.company.com/lam/graphics
</VirtualHost>
```

Nginx configuration

There is no fully automatic setup of Nginx but LAM provides a ready-to-use configuration file.

Security headers

LAM already sets several security headers by default. For production machines it is recommended to run LAM with "https://" enabled. In this case the HSTS header should be set.

This will enforce browsers to connect via "https://". Please note that you need to make sure that your installation has a valid certificate now and in the future.

The example configurations below already include a commented example for "Strict-Transport-Security" (HSTS). You can activate it if needed.

RPM based installations

The RPM package has dependencies on Apache. Therefore, Nginx is not officially supported with this installation mode. Use tar.bz2 if you are unsure.

However, the package also includes an Nginx configuration file. Please include it in your server directive like this:

```
server {
    ...

    include /etc/ldap-account-manager/lam.nginx.conf;

    ...
}
```

The included config file uses "127.0.0.1:9000" for PHP. In case you run PHP with a socket please update the parameter "fastcgi_pass" to e.g. "/var/run/php8-fpm.sock".

DEB based installations

The LAM installation package ships with an Nginx configuration file. Please include it in your server directive like this:

```
server {
    ...

    include /etc/ldap-account-manager/nginx.conf;

    ...
}
```

The included config file uses PHP 8.2. In case you run with a different PHP version please update the parameter "fastcgi_pass" to e.g. "/var/run/php/php8.3-fpm.sock".

tar.bz2 based installations

Please add the following configuration snippet to your server directive.

Appendix C. Typical OpenLDAP settings

Some basic hints to configure the OpenLDAP server:

Size limit:

You will get a message like "LDAP sizelimit exceeded, not all entries are shown." when you hit the LDAP search limit.

OpenLDAP allows by default 500 return values per search, if you have more users/groups/hosts please change this:

slapd.conf:

e.g. "sizelimit 10000" or "sizelimit -1" for unlimited return values

slapd.d:

e.g. "olcSizeLimit: 10000" or "olcSizeLimit: -1" for unlimited return values in /etc/ldap/slapd.d/cn=config.ldif

Unique attributes:

There are cases where you do not want that same attribute values exist multiple times in your database. A good example are UID/GID numbers.

OpenLDAP provides the attribute uniqueness overlay [<http://www.openldap.org/doc/admin24/overlays.html>] for this task.

Example to force unique UID numbers:

In */etc/ldap/slapd.d/cn=config/cn=module{0}.ldif* add "olcModuleLoad: {3}unique" (replace "3" with the highest existing number plus one).

Now in */etc/ldap/slapd.d/cn=config/olcDatabase={1}bdb.ldif* add e.g. "olcUniqueURI: ldap:///?uidNumber?sub"

Indices:

Indices will improve the performance when searching for entries in the LDAP directory. The following indices are recommended:

```
index objectClass eq
index default sub
index uidNumber eq
index gidNumber eq
index memberUid eq
index cn,sn,uid,displayName pres,sub,eq
# Samba 3.x
index sambaSID eq
index sambaPrimaryGroupSID eq
index sambaDomainName eq
```

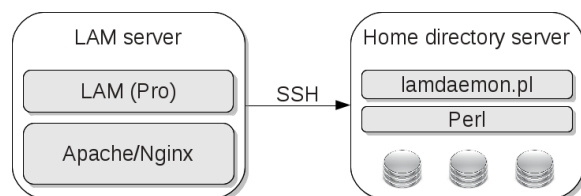
Appendix D. Setup for home directory and quota management

Lamdaemon.pl is used to modify quota and home directories on a remote or local host via SSH (even if homedirs are located on localhost).

If you want to use it you have to set up the following things to get it to work:

Installation

First of all, you need to install lamdaemon.pl on your remote server where LAM should manage homedirs and/or quota. This is usually a different server than the one where LAM is installed. But there is no problem if it is the same.



Debian based (e.g. also Ubuntu)

Please install the lamdaemon DEB package on your quota/homedir server.

RPM based (Fedora, CentOS, Suse, ...)

Please install the lamdaemon RPM package on your quota/homedir server.

Other

Please copy lib/lamdaemon.pl from the LAM tar.bz2 package to your quota/homedir server. The location may be anywhere (e.g. use /opt/lamdaemon). Please make the lamdaemon.pl script executable.

LDAP Account Manager configuration

- Set the remote or local host in the configuration (e.g. 127.0.0.1)
- Path to lamdaemon.pl, e.g. /srv/www/htdocs/lam/lib/lamdaemon.pl If you installed a DEB or RPM package then the script will be located at /usr/share/ldap-account-manager/lib/lamdaemon.pl.
- Your LAM admin user must be a valid Unix account. It needs to have the object class "posixAccount" and an attribute "uid". This account must be accepted by the SSH daemon of your home directory server. Do not create a second local account but change your system to accept LDAP users. You can use LAM to add the Unix account part to your admin user or create a new account. Please do not forget to setup LDAP write access (ACLs [<http://www.openldap.org/doc/admin24/access-control.html>]) if you create a new account.

Setup for home directory and quota management

Lamdaemon settings

Server list	localhost:LOCAL	?
Path to external script	/lib/lamdaemon.pl	?
User name		?
SSH key file	.key	?
SSH key password	*****	?

Rights for the home directory ?

	Read	Write	Execute
Owner	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Group	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Other	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Note that the builtin admin/manager entries do not work for lamdaemon. You need to login with a Unix account.

Security settings

Login method	Fixed list	?
List of valid users *	cn=admin,o=test,c=de	?

OpenLDAP ACL location:

The access rights for OpenLDAP are configured in `/etc/ldap/slapd.conf` or `/etc/ldap/slapd.d/cn=config/olcDatabase={1}bdb.ldif`.

Setup sudo

The perl script has to run as root. Therefore we need a wrapper, sudo. Edit `/etc/sudoers` on host where homedirs or quotas should be used and add the following line:

```
$admin All= NOPASSWD: $path_to_lamdaemon *
```

`$admin` is the admin user from LAM (must be a valid Unix account) and `$path_to_lamdaemon` is the path to lamdaemon.pl.

Example:

```
myAdmin ALL= NOPASSWD: /srv/www/htdocs/lam/lib/lamdaemon.pl *
```

You might need to run the sudo command once manually to init sudo. The command "sudo -l" will show all possible sudo commands of the current user.

Attention: Please do not use the options "Defaults requiretty" and "Defaults env_reset" in `/etc/sudoers`. Otherwise you might get errors like "you must have a tty to run sudo" or "no tty present and no askpass program specified".

Setup Perl

We need an extra Perl module - Quota. To install it, run:

```
perl -MCPAN -e shell  
install Quota
```

If your Perl executable is not located in `/usr/bin/perl` you will have to edit the path in the first line of lamdaemon.pl. If you have problems compiling the Perl modules try installing a newer release of your GCC compiler and the "make" application.

Several Linux distributions already include a quota package for Perl.

Set up SSH

Your SSH daemon must offer the password authentication method. To activate it just use this configuration option in `/etc/ssh/sshd_config`:

```
PasswordAuthentication yes
```

Troubleshooting

If you have problems managing quotas and home directories then these points might help:

- There is a test page for lamdaemon: Login to LAM and open Tools -> Tests -> Lamdaemon test
- Check `/var/log/auth.log` or its equivalent on your system. This file contains messages about all logins. If the ssh login failed then you will find a description about the reason here.
- Set sshd in debug mode. In `/etc/ssh/sshd_conf` add these lines:

```
SyslogFacility AUTH  
LogLevel DEBUG3
```

Now check `/var/log/syslog` for messages from sshd.

Error message "**Your LAM admin user (...) must be a valid Unix account to work with lamdaemon!**": This happens if you use the default LDAP admin/manager user to login to LAM. Please see here and setup a Unix account.

Appendix E. Setup password self reset schema (LAM Pro)

New installation

Please see here if you want to upgrade an existing schema version.

Schema installation

Please install the schema that comes with LAM Pro. The schema files are located in:

- tar.bz2: docs/schema
- DEB: /usr/share/doc/ldap-account-manager/docs/schema
- RPM: /usr/share/doc/ldap-account-manager-{VERSION}/schema

OpenLDAP with slapd.conf configuration

For a configuration with slapd.conf-file copy passwordSelfReset.schema to /etc/ldap/schema/ and add this line to slapd.conf:

```
include /etc/ldap/schema/passwordSelfReset.schema
```

OpenLDAP with slapd.d configuration

For slapd.d configurations you need to upload the schema file passwordSelfReset.ldif via ldapadd command:

```
ldapadd -x -W -H ldap://localhost -D "cn=admin,o=test,c=de" -f passwordSelfReset.ldif
```

Please replace "localhost" with your LDAP server and "cn=admin,o=test,c=de" with your LDAP admin user (usually starts with cn=admin or cn=manager).

In some cases you might need to import directly on the OpenLDAP server as root:

```
ldapadd -Y EXTERNAL -H ldapi:/// -f passwordSelfReset.ldif
```

389 server

Please replace INSTANCE with installation ID, e.g. slapd-389ds.

```
cp passwordSelfReset-389server.ldif /etc/dirsrv/INSTANCE/schema/70pwdreset.ldif
systemctl restart dirsrv.target
```

Samba 4

The schema files are passwordSelfReset-Samba4-attributes.ldif and passwordSelfReset-Samba4-objectClass.ldif.

First, you need to edit them and replace "DOMAIN_TOP_DN" with your LDAP suffix (e.g. dc=samba4,dc=test).

Then install the attribute and afterwards the object class schema file:

```
ldbmodify -H /var/lib/samba/private/sam.ldb passwordSelfReset-Samba4-attributes.ldif --option="dsdb:schema update allowed"
```

```
ldbmodify -H /var/lib/samba/private/sam.ldb passwordSelfReset-Samba4-objectClass.ldif --option="dsdb:schema update allowed"
```

Windows

The schema file is passwordSelfReset-Windows.ldif.

First, you need to edit it and replace "DOMAIN_TOP_DN" with your LDAP suffix (e.g. dc=windows,dc=test).

Then install the schema file as administrator on a command line:

```
ldifde -v -i -f passwordSelfReset-Windows.ldif
```

This allows to set a security question + answer for each account.

Schema update

The schema files are located in:

- tar.bz2: docs/schema/updates
- DEB: /usr/share/doc/ldap-account-manager/docs/schema/updates
- RPM: /usr/share/doc/ldap-account-manager-{VERSION}/schema/updates

Schema versions:

1. Initial version (LAM Pro 3.6 - 4.4)
2. Added passwordSelfResetBackupMail (LAM Pro 4.5 - 5.5)
3. Multiple security questions (LAM Pro 5.6)

OpenLDAP with slapd.conf configuration

Install the schema file like a new install (skip modification of slapd.conf file).

OpenLDAP with slapd.d configuration

The upgrade requires to stop the LDAP server.

Steps:

1. Stop OpenLDAP with e.g. "/etc/init.d/slapd stop"
2. Delete the old schema file. It is located in e.g. "/etc/ldap/slapd.d/cn=config/cn=schema" and called "cn={XX}passwordselfreset.ldif" (XX can be any number)
3. Start OpenLDAP with e.g. "/etc/init.d/slapd start"
4. Install the schema file like a new install

Samba 4

Install the these update files by following the install instructions in the file. In case you you upgrade with a version difference of 2 or more you will need to apply all intermediate update scripts.

- samba4_version_1_to_2_attributes.ldif (upgrade from version 1 only)
- samba4_version_1_to_2_objectClass.ldif (upgrade from version 1 only)
- samba4_version_2_to_3_attributes.ldif (upgrade from version 2)
- samba4_version_2_to_3_objectClass.ldif (upgrade from version 2)

Please note that attributes file needs to be installed first.

Windows

Install the file(s) by following the install instructions in the file. In case you you upgrade with a version difference of 2 or more you will need to apply all intermediate update scripts.

- windows_version_1_to_2.ldif (upgrade from version 1 only)
- windows_version_2_to_3.ldif (upgrade from version 2)

Appendix F. Adapt LAM to your corporate design

There are cases where you might want to change LAM's default look'n'feel to better integrate it in your company network. Changes can be done like this:

Change colors, fonts and other parts with custom CSS

You can integrate custom CSS files in LAM. It is recommended to write a separate CSS file instead of modifying LAM's default files.

The CSS files are located in

```
DEB/RPM: /usr/share/ldap-account-manager/style
tar.bz2: style
```

LAM will automatically integrate all CSS files in alphabetical order. E.g. you can create a file called "900_my-Company.css" which will be added as last file.

In many cases it can be sufficient to overwrite some CSS variables. See top of 500_layout.css [https://github.com/LDAPAccountManager/lam/blob/develop/lam/style/500_layout.css] for defined variables.

Example:

This will change the background color of all pages to grey.

```
:root {
  --lam-background-color-default: #E7E7E7;
}
```

Change LAM logo:

```
div.lam-header-left img {
  background: url("../graphics/key.svg") center no-repeat;
  box-sizing: border-box;
  width: 32px;
  height: 32px;
  padding-left: 32px;
}
```

You can use the same way to change font/button colors and more.

Change header bar to mark different environments

```
.lam-header {
  box-shadow: 0px 3px 2px -2px red;
}
```

Other images

All images are located in

```
DEB/RPM: /usr/share/ldap-account-manager/graphics
tar.bz2: graphics
```

Please note that if you replace images then you need to reapply your changes every time you upgrade LAM.

Special changes with custom JavaScript

In rare cases it might not be sufficient to write custom CSS or replace some image files. E.g. you might want to add custom content to all pages.

For these cases you can add a custom JavaScript file that contains your code.

The JavaScript files are located in

DEB/RPM: /usr/share/ldap-account-manager/templates/lib
tar.bz2: templates/lib

LAM will automatically integrate all .js files in alphabetical order. E.g. you can create a file called "900_my-Company.js" which will be added as last file.

Self service

See [here](#) for self service customisations.

Appendix G. Clustering LAM

LAM is a web application based on PHP. Therefore, clustering is not directly a part of the application.

But here are some hints to run LAM in a clustered environment.

Application parts:

LAM can be divided into three parts

- Software
- Configuration files
- Session files and temporary data

Software:

This is the simplest part. Just install LAM on each cluster node. Please note that if you run LAM Pro you will need either one license for each active cluster node or a company license.

Configuration files:

These files include the LAM server profiles, account profiles, PDF structures, ... Usually, they do not change frequently and can be put on a shared file system (e.g. NFS, AFS, ...).

Please link "config" or "/var/lib/ldap-account-manager/config" to a directory on your shared file system.

Session data and temporary files:

These are critical because the files may change on every page load. There are basically two options:

- load balancer with session stickiness: In this case your load balancer will forward all requests of a user to the same cluster node. In this case you can keep the files locally on your cluster nodes. If you already have a load balancer then this is the simplest solution and performs best. The disadvantage is that if a node fails then all users connected to this node will lose their session and need to relogin.
- shared file system: This should only be used if your load balancer does not support session stickiness or you use a different system to distribute request across the cluster. A shared file system will decrease performance for all page loads.

Session data and temporary files are located in "tmp" + "sess" or "/var/lib/ldap-account-manager/tmp" + "/var/lib/ldap-account-manager/sess".

Appendix H. Troubleshooting

Reset configuration password

Server profiles

The password for the server profiles can be reset using the master configuration password. Open LAM configuration -> Edit server profiles ->Manage server profiles for this.

Main configuration

File system storage

In case you lost your master configuration password you need to manually edit the main configuration file (config.cfg) on the file system.

1. Locate config.cfg: On DEB/RPM installations it is in /usr/share/ldap-account-manager/config and for tar.bz2 in config folder.
2. Locate the "password" entry in the file
3. Replace the password hash after "password: " with your new clear-text password (e.g. "secret")

After the change the line should look like this:

```
password: secret
```

You can now login using your new password. Set the password once again via GUI in main configuration settings. This will then put again a hash value in the config.cfg file.

Database storage

Use a database admin tool (e.g. MySQL Workbench/phpMyAdmin) and connect to your database. Locate the table "main_configuration" and the row with value "config" in column "name". You will now need to edit this value which is in JSON format.

There is an entry "password" followed by a colon. Edit now the value in quotes that comes directly after. Enter your new password in clear text there. Do not remove the quotes.

```
{  
  "password": "CRYPT:  
SHA512$6WmNBd1WdDL4s.XdFz10Pp1G:  
h7SmFFXjhg445R1rSEWbDvyJLCMIV/jc:  
Vzh1TKkkbFzJRG9MMHueA==", "default": "  
rDetails": "false", "logLevel": "7", "log  
/lam.log", "allowedHosts": "192.168.*.1
```

You can now login using your new password. Set the password once again via GUI in main configuration settings. This will then put again a hash value in the config.cfg file.

Reset IP restriction

If you entered a wrong value into the allowed IP list then LAM might lock you out of the system. You can reset the IP list like this.

File system storage

You need to manually edit the main configuration file (config.cfg) on the file system.

1. Locate config.cfg: On DEB/RPM installations it is in /usr/share/ldap-account-manager/config and for tar.bz2 in config folder.

2. Locate the "allowedHosts" entry in the file
3. Remove the line starting with "allowedHosts: "

Now you can edit the IP list again via LAM GUI.

Database storage

Use a database admin tool (e.g. MySQL Workbench/phpMyAdmin) and connect to your database. Locate the table "main_configuration" and the row with value "config" in column "name". You will now need to edit this value which is in JSON format.

There is an entry "allowedHosts" followed by a colon. Now, remove anything of the value in quotes that comes directly after. Do not remove the quotes.

Now you can edit the IP list again via LAM GUI.

Functional issues

Size limit

You will get a message like "LDAP sizelimit exceeded, not all entries are shown." when you hit the LDAP search limit.

- OpenLDAP: See the OpenLDAP settings to fix this.
- 389 server: set nsslapd-sizelimit in cn=config (may also be set per user)
- other LDAP servers: please see your server documentation

Invalid syntax errors:

If you get any strange errors like "Invalid syntax" or "Invalid DN syntax" please check if your LDAP schema matches LAM's requirements.

Schema test:

This can be done by running "Tools" -> "Tests" -> "Schema test" inside LAM.

If there are any object classes or attributes missing you will get a notice. See LDAP schema files for a list of used schemas. You may also want to deactivate unused modules in your LAM server profile (tab "Modules").

Schema test

Users		
Personal	✓	No problems found.
Unix	✓	No problems found.
Shadow	✓	No problems found.
Password policy	✓	No problems found.
Groups		
Unix	✓	No problems found.
Password policies		
Password policy	✓	No problems found.

LDAP Logging:

If your schema is correct you can turn on LDAP logging to get more detailed error messages from your LDAP server.

OpenLDAP logging:

- slapd.conf: In /etc/ldap/slapd.conf turn logging on with the line "loglevel 256".
- slapd.d: In /etc/ldap/slapd.d/cn=config.ldif please change the attribute "olcLogLevel" to "Stats". Please add a line "olcLogLevel: Stats" if the attribute is missing.

After changing the configuration please restart OpenLDAP. It usually uses /var/log/syslog for log output.

PHP logging

Sometimes it can help to enable PHP logging inside LAM. You can do this in the logging area of LAM's main configuration. Set the logging option to "all" and check if there are any messages printed in your browser window. Please note that not every notice message is an error but it may help to find the problem.

Performance issues

LAM is tested to work with 10000 users with acceptable performance. If you have a larger directory or slow hardware then here are some points to increase performance.

The first step is to check if performance problems are caused by the LAM web server or the LDAP server. Please check which machine suffers from high system load (CPU/memory consumption).

High network latency may also be a problem. For large installations please make sure that LAM web server and LDAP server are located in the same building/server room.

If you run LAM on multiple nodes (DNS load balancing/hardware load balancer) then also check the clustering section.

LDAP server

Use indices

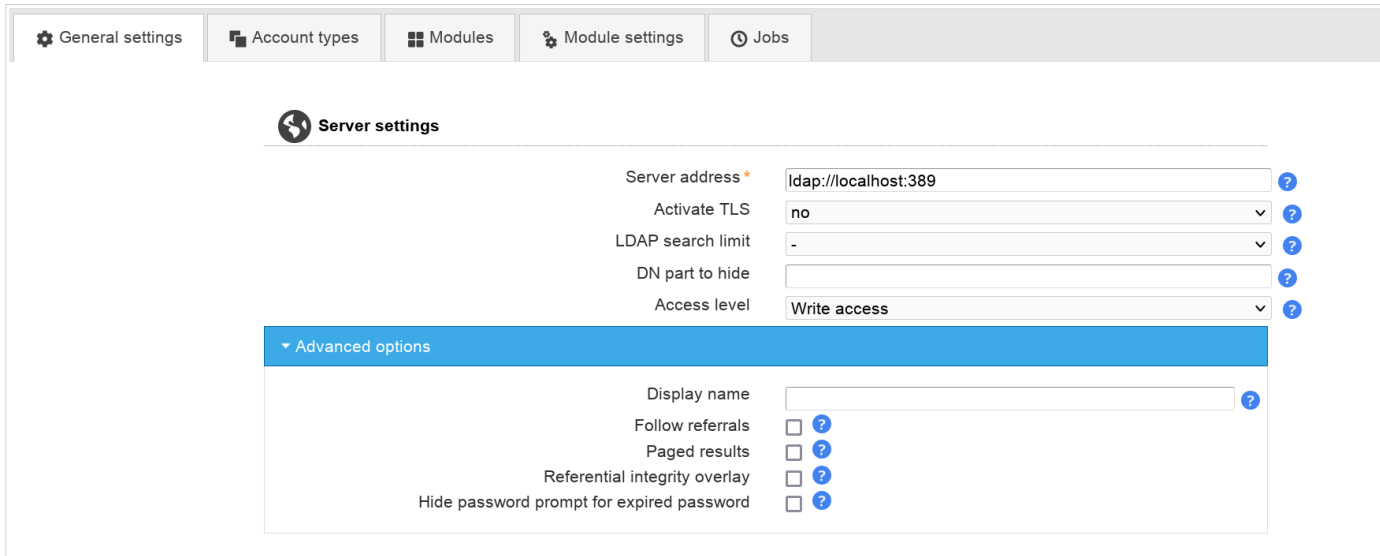
Depending on the queries it may help to add some more indices on the LDAP server. Depending on your LDAP software it may already suggest indices in its log files. See here for typical OpenLDAP indices.

Reduce query results by splitting LDAP management into multiple server profiles

If you manage a very large directory then it might already be separated into multiple subtrees (e.g. by country, subsidiary, ...). Do not use a single LAM server profile to manage your whole directory. Use different server profiles for each separated LDAP subtree where possible (e.g. one for German users and one for French ones).

Limit query results

LAM allows to set an LDAP search limit [general_settings] for each server profile. This will limit the number of entries returned by your LDAP server. Use with caution because it can cause problems (e.g. with automatic UID generation) when LAM is not able to read all entries.



LAM web server

Install a PHP accelerator

There are tools like OpCache [http://php.net/manual/en/book.opcache.php] (free) or Zend Server [http://www.zend.com/en/products/server/] (commercial) that provide caching of PHP pages to improve performance. They will reduce the time for parsing the PHP pages and IO load.

This is a simply way to enhance performance since OpCache is part of most Linux distributions.

OpCache statistics can be shown with opcache-status [https://github.com/rlerdorf/opcache-status].

PHP 5.6.27-0+deb8u1 with OpCache 7.0.6-dev

